

ENGLISH

الصف الخامس الإبتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

20
26

5th
PRIMARY
SECOND TERM



دار غزة



للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

5

Primary

Part 1

- Specifications for Primary Five

- Unit 1: Hobbies Make Us Shine!

- Unit 2: At the Doctor's

- Unit 3: Suitcase Stories

- Review 1



Part 2

- Unit 4: Jobs in The Animal Kingdom

- Unit 5: Our Solar System

- Unit 6: Story Time: Offline but Happy

- Review 2

- Listening materials

- Booklet

- Dictation

- Exercises and Tests

- Final Tests



Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات امتحان الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٥ - ٢٠٢٦

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

A- Listening (2 Marks)

1 Listen and write (T)True or (F) False: (2 Marks)

استمع واكتب صواب أو خطأ :

A listening text of about **SIXTY (60)** words at the appropriate difficulty level for primary **FIVE** followed by **FOUR (4)** sentences is provided. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Learners are asked to listen to the text and write (T)True or (F) False.

(Half a mark each)

B- Reading (11 Marks)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (2 Marks)

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

FOUR (4) MCQs (2 vocabulary and 2 structure) based on the Set Books are provided. Learners are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2 Marks)

اقرأ واكمل النص بالكلمات التي في الاطار :

An unseen text from **FIFTY (50)** to **SIXTY (60)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Learners are asked to complete each deletion in the text with **ONE (1)** of the **FIVE (5)** words given. The first sentence should be written in full.

(Half a mark each)

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7 Marks)

اقرأ النص واجب عن الاسئلة :

An unseen literary or informational text from **EIGHTY (80)** to **NINETY (90)** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for **Primary FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. TWO (2) MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options each

(Half a mark each)

B. THREE (3) open-ended questions

(2 marks each)

The questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in a text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in a text.

C- Writing (17 Marks)

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4 Marks)

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

TWO (2) structure sentences related to what learners have studied are provided.

Learners are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) given between brackets. (2 marks each)

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2 Marks)

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

TWO (2) scrambled statements of not less than **SIX (6)** words each are provided.

Learners are asked to reorder the words to form correct sentences. (One mark each)

7 Punctuate the following: (4 Marks)

ضع علامات الترقيم للاثي:

TWO (2) simple statements (a sentence and a question) of about **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Each statement has **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks (**Capital Letter, Full Stop or Question Mark**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly.

(2 marks each)

8 Write a text of **FOURTY (40)** words using the words below: (7 Marks)

اكتب فقرة انشائية من (40) كلمة:

Learners are asked to write a paragraph / fiction story or a narrative text of not less than **FORTY (40)** words using **THREE (3)** guiding elements that can be words, questions... etc.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – Two marks for vocabulary- One mark for grammar- One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)



Hobbies Make Us Shine!

الهوايات تجعلنا نتألق!

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Express their favorite hobbies using simple sentences.
يعبر الطلاب عن هواياتهم المفضلة باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- Share past and present abilities using can / can't / could / couldn't.
يشارك الطلاب قدراتهم الماضية والحالية باستخدام (can/ can't/ could/ couldn't).
- Participate in pair and group discussions about hobbies and present ideas confidently.
يشارك الطلاب في مناقشات ثنائية وجماعية حول الهوايات وتقديم الأفكار بثقة.
- Role-play hobby-related situations.
يقوم الطلاب بتمثيل أدوار لمواقف متعلقة بالهوايات.

Listening:

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to hobbies.
يتعرف الطلاب على المفردات المتعلقة بالهوايات ويفهمونها.
- Identify main ideas and details from short dialogs and stories about hobbies.
يحدد الطلاب الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل من الحوارات والقصص القصيرة حول الهوايات.
- Follow oral instructions for classroom activities such as surveys or activities.
يتبع الطلاب التعليمات الشفهية للأنشطة الصفية مثل الاستبيانات أو الأنشطة.

Reading:

- Read short texts and stories about hobbies for main ideas and details.
يقرأ الطلاب نصوصًا وقصصًا قصيرة عن الهوايات لاستخلاص الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل.
- Identify sequencing words in informational texts.
يحدد الطلاب كلمات التسلسل في النصوص المعلوماتية.
- Recognize suffixes (-ment, -ship) in context and understand their meanings.
يتعرف الطلاب على اللواحق مثل (-ment/ -ship) في سياقها ويفهمون معانيها.
- Answer comprehension questions related to texts.
يجيب الطلاب على أسئلة الفهم المتعلقة بالنصوص.

Writing:

- Write sentences about their hobby using can / could.
يكتب الطلاب جملًا حول هوايتهم باستخدام (can / could).
- Organize steps for starting a hobby using sequencing words.
ينظم الطلاب خطوات البدء بهواية ما باستخدام كلمات التسلسل.
- Complete a short survey and write answers clearly.
يكمل الطلاب استبيانًا قصيرًا ويكتبون الإجابات بوضوح.
- Produce a short guided paragraph about hobbies with a title, correct spelling, and punctuation.
ينتج الطلاب فقرة قصيرة موجهة حول الهوايات مع عنوان، وهجاء صحيح، وعلامات ترقيم سليمة.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات،



playing board games

لعب ألعاب الطاولة (الألعاب اللوحية)



cycling

ركوب الدراجات



skating

التزلج



painting

الرسم



singing

الغناء



solving puzzles

حل الألغاز



playing the piano

العزف على البيانو



crafting with paper

الحرف اليدوية بالورق

hobby

هواية

drawing

الرسم

talent show

عرض المواهب



Other words

كلمات أخرى

picture

صورة

special

خاص / مميز

story writing

كتابة القصص

joy

فرح

journals

مذكرات

fishing

صيد السمك

coloring

تلوين

creative

مبدع

amazing

مدهش

natural

طبيعي

wonderful

رائع

skill

مهارة

choice

اختيار

maybe

ربما

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

show your talent	يُظهر موهبته	On weekends	في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع
do crafting with paper	يصنع الحرف اليدوية بالورق	in the park	في المنتزه
That sounds fun!	يبدو ذلك ممتعاً!	count as a hobby	يُحسب كهواية
share... with	يشارك... مع	at the end	في النهاية
perform by playing the piano	يؤدي بالعزف على البيانو	join ... together	ينضمّون معاً
sing a song	يُغني أغنية	ride a bicycle	يركب دراجة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

share	يشارك
perform	يؤدي
enjoy	يستمتع
remember	يتذكر
cycle	يركب الدراجة
skate	يتزلج
skip	يتجاوز / يتخط
plan	يخطط

Past ماض

shared
performed
enjoyed
remembered
cycled
skated
skipped
planned

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bring	يحضر
forget	ينسى
show	يُظهر
write	يكتب
do/does	يفعل

Past ماض

brought
forgot
showed
wrote
did

Definitions

تعريفات

talent	موهبة	a natural skill	موهبة طبيعية
crafting	صناعة الحرف اليدوية	making something with your hands	صناعة شيء ما بيدك
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	riding a bicycle	ركوب دراجة
singing	الغناء	using your voice for music	استخدام صوتك في الموسيقى
solving puzzles	حل الألغاز	a game where you join pieces together	لعبة عبارة عن تجميع قطع مع بعضها

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 What's your favorite hobby?

ما هي هوايتك المفضلة ؟

Ex: What's your favorite hobby?

- My favorite hobby is **cycling**.

2 enjoy/ love + V.ing

Ex: I **enjoy** solving puzzles and playing board games with my family.

3 Don't + inf.

صيغة النهي (تستخدم لإعطاء امر بعدم فعل شئ)

Ex: **Don't** forget coloring.

Study the following

1 Next week, we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show class".

في الأسبوع القادم، سيكون لدينا عرض الهوايات والمواهب للصف الدراسي.

2 I'll show my drawing and painting.

سأعرض رسوماتي ولوحاتي.

3 I can also do some crafting with paper.

يمكنني أيضاً القيام ببعض الحرف اليدوية بالورق.

4 I think I'll perform by playing the piano and singing a song.

أعتقد أنني سأقدم عرضاً بالعزف على البيانو وغناء أغنية.

5 On weekends, I love cycling and skating in the park.

في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، أحب ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في المنتزه.

6 I enjoy solving puzzles and playing board games with my family.

أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي.

7 Story writing is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals.

كتابة القصص هي هوايتي. أحياناً أكتب قصصاً أو مذكرات.

8 This talent show will be amazing!

سيكون عرض المواهب هذا مذهلاً!

9 Hobbies make us special.

الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين.

10 Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy with the class!

في الأسبوع القادم، اجعل هوايتك تنبض بالحياة وشارك فرحتك مع الصف!

Listen and read

استمع وأقرأ:



استمع إلى النص:

Tape Script



Teacher : Next week we'll have a "Hobby Talent Show⁽¹⁾ class" Who wants to share⁽²⁾ their hobby?

Maya : Me! I'll show my drawing⁽³⁾ and painting⁽⁴⁾. I can also do some crafting⁽⁵⁾ with paper.

مايا: أنا! سأعرض رسوماتي ولوحاتي. يمكنني أيضًا القيام ببعض الحرف اليدوية بالورق.

Adam : That sounds fun! I think I'll perform⁽⁶⁾ by playing the piano and singing a song.

آدم: يبدو ذلك ممتعًا! اعتقد أنني سأقدم عرضًا بالعزف على البيانو وغناء أغنية.

Maya : On weekends, I love cycling⁽⁷⁾ and skating⁽⁸⁾ in the park. Maybe I can bring a picture⁽⁹⁾ of that.

مايا: في عطلات نهاية الأسبوع، أحب ركوب الدراجات والتزلج في المنتزه. ربما يمكنني إحضار صورة لذلك.

Adam : I enjoy solving puzzles⁽¹⁰⁾ and playing board games⁽¹¹⁾ with my family. Could that count as⁽¹²⁾ a hobby?

آدم: أستمتع بحل الألغاز ولعب ألعاب الطاولة مع عائلتي. هل يمكن أن يُحسب ذلك كهواية؟

Nour : Story writing⁽¹³⁾ is my hobby. I sometimes write stories or journals⁽¹⁴⁾.

نور: كتابة القصص هي هوايتي. أحيانًا أكتب قصصًا أو مذكرات.

Maya : Don't forget coloring⁽¹⁵⁾- we love it! This talent show will be amazing⁽¹⁶⁾!

مايا: لا تنسَ التلوين - نحن نحبها! سيكون عرض المواهب هذا مذهلًا!

Teacher : Wonderful⁽¹⁷⁾ choices, everyone! Remember, hobbies make us special⁽¹⁸⁾. Next week, bring your hobby to life and share your joy⁽¹⁹⁾ with the class!

المعلم: اختيارات رائعة للجميع! تذكروا، الهوايات تجعلنا مميزين. في الأسبوع القادم، اجعل هوايتك تنبض بالحياة وشارك فرحتك

مع الصف!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- عرض مواهب
- ٢- يشارك
- ٣- رسمة
- ٤- لوحة
- ٥- حرف يدوية
- ٦- يؤدي
- ٧- ركوب الدراجات
- ٨- التزلج
- ٩- صورة
- ١٠- يحل الألغاز
- ١١- ألعاب الطاولة
- ١٢- يُحسب ذلك
- ١٣- كتابة القصص
- ١٤- مذكرات
- ١٥- التلوين
- ١٦- مذهل
- ١٧- رائع
- ١٨- مميز
- ١٩- فرح

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The word "_____ " means a natural skill. SB
☐ a skate ☐ b show ☐ c talent ☐ d picture
2. "_____ " is a game where you join pieces together. SB
☐ a Solving puzzles ☐ b Eating ☐ c Singing ☐ d Painting
3. _____ is making something with your hands. SB
☐ a Cycling ☐ b Skating ☐ c Riding ☐ d Crafting
4. "_____ " means riding a bicycle. SB
☐ a Coloring ☐ b Cycling ☐ c Singing ☐ d Story writing
5. Using your voice for music is _____. SB
☐ a Cycling ☐ b Singing ☐ c Riding ☐ d Writing
6. If you are using a keyboard to make music, you are _____. SB
☐ a eating ☐ b playing the piano ☐ c cycling ☐ d skating
7. I really enjoy playing _____ with my family on weekends.
☐ a crafting ☐ b puzzles ☐ c board games ☐ d journals
8. I will _____ crafting with paper for the talent show.
☐ a do ☐ b go ☐ c have ☐ d make
9. I think coloring should _____ as a hobby.
☐ a see ☐ b eat ☐ c count ☐ d solve
10. My sister enjoys _____ the piano because it helps her relax after a long day. SB
☐ a playing ☐ b doing ☐ c having ☐ d watching

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

natural - board games - share - perform - special

Talent shows are an amazing way to show your talent. My sister will ① _____ a song by playing the piano. My hobby is story writing, and I will ② _____ a story with the class. On weekends, I enjoy fishing, while Mariam plays ③ _____ with our family. We agree that hobbies make us ④ _____.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Next Saturday, our town will hold a special talent show in the park. It is a wonderful event where people show their special skills. My brother will perform by playing the piano. His friend will sing a song. I love crafting with paper, so I will bring my amazing projects to share. Other people will perform magic, cycling tricks, and skating. We will all join together at the end for a big picture. It is a day full of joy and fun for everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The main idea of the passage is
☐ a the town's talent show ☐ b playing the piano
☐ c weekend cycling ☐ d making new friends
- The writer's town will hold a special talent show
☐ a last Saturday ☐ b next Saturday
☐ c last Sunday ☐ d next Sunday

B. Answer the following questions:

- What will the writer's brother perform?

- Why do the people feel happy about the talent show?

- What three different activities will people be performing at the show?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

- park - cycling - love - skating - I - and - the - in.

- journals - Nelly - stories - sometime - or - writes.

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

3. show - amazing - be - This - talent - will.

4. solving - on - enjoy - weekends - They - puzzles.

5. do - crafting - paper - Zain - can - some - with - also.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. i love painting and cycling on weekends

SB

2. do you think talent shows are important

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your favorite hobby

talent show - share - creative

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



free time	وقت الفراغ	creativity	الإبداع
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	strong	قوى
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	energetic	حيوي / نشيط
patience	الصبر	board games	العباب لوحية

Other words كلمات أخرى

schoolwork	العمل المدرسي	success	النجاح
simple	بسيط	helmet	خوذة
smart	ذكي	safety	السلامة / الأمان
outside	في الخارج	concert	حفلة موسيقية
main	رئيسي / أساسي	relaxing	مريح
idea	فكرة		

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	take the place of	يحل محل / يأخذ مكان
have fun	يمضي وقتًا ممتعًا	do chores	يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية
stay healthy/ strong/ energetic	يبقى بصحة جيدة / قويًا / نشيطًا	earn money	يكسب مالًا
go cycling	يذهب لركوب الدراجات		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

relax	يسترخي
practice	يمارس / يتدرب
paint	يرسم / يلون
place	يضع
earn	يكسب
require	يتطلب
improve	يحسن / يتطور

Past ماضٍ

relax	ed
practice	d
paint	ed
place	d
earn	ed
require	d
improve	d

Present مضارع

grow	ينمو / يزرع
draw	يرسم
write	يكتب
spend	يقضي / يصرف
choose	يختار
teach	يُعلم
think	يفكر

Past ماضٍ

grew
drew
wrote
spent
chose
taught
thought

Definitions

تعريفات

hobbies

هوايات

the activities we love to do in our free time

الأنشطة التي نحب أن نفعليها في وقت الفراغ

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 When + present simple, present simple

عندما (تستخدم مع العادات التي تتكرر دائماً، فالحدث الثاني عادة ما يحدث كروتين عندما يحدث الحدث الأول)

Ex: When people sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity.

Ex: When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.

2 I was good at + n/ v.ing

كنت جيد في

Ex: I was good at playing football.

Study the following

1 Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time.

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في وقت فراغنا.

2 Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and stay healthy.

الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء والاستمتاع والبقاء بصحة جيدة.

3 When people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn teamwork and problem-solving.

عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، فإنهم يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات.

4 When they sing or play the piano, they practice patience and creativity.

عندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، فإنهم يمارسون الصبر والإبداع.

5 When they go cycling or skating, they stay strong and energetic.

عندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، فإنهم يبقون أقوياء ونشيطين.

6 Many children can draw, paint, or write stories now.

يستطيع العديد من الأطفال الرسم أو التلوين أو كتابة القصص الآن.

7 Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only place a few pieces.

يستطيع بعض الناس إنهاء الألغاز بسرعة اليوم، ولكن في الماضي كانوا يستطيعون وضع بضع قطع فقط.

8 In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, or fishing.

في الماضي، كان يستطيع الأطفال قضاء وقت أطول في الخارج في الجري أو التزلج أو صيد الأسماك.

9 We can choose from many hobbies that help us learn skills for life.

نستطيع الاختيار من بين العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على تعلم مهارات للحياة.

10 Hobbies are not only fun, they make us smarter, stronger, and happier.

الهوايات ليست ممتعة فحسب، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً وقوة وسعادة.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Hobbies Really Count! الهوايات لها قيمة حقيقية

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our **free time**⁽¹⁾. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us joy.

الهوايات هي الأنشطة التي نحب القيام بها في وقت فراغنا، هي ليست عملاً مدرسياً، بل أشياء تجلب لنا الفرح.

Hobbies are important because they help us **relax**⁽²⁾, **have fun**⁽³⁾, and **stay healthy**⁽⁴⁾. For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn **teamwork**⁽⁵⁾ and **problem-solving**⁽⁶⁾. When they sing or play the piano, they practice **patience**⁽⁷⁾ and **creativity**⁽⁸⁾. When they go **cycling**⁽⁹⁾ or **skating**⁽¹⁰⁾, they stay strong and energetic.

الهوايات مهمة لأنها تساعدنا على الاسترخاء، والاستمتاع، والبقاء بصحة جيدة. على سبيل المثال، عندما يلعب الناس ألعاب الطاولة أو يحلون الألغاز، فإنهم يتعلمون العمل الجماعي وحل المشكلات. وعندما يغنون أو يعزفون على البيانو، فإنهم يمارسون الصبر والإبداع. وعندما يذهبون لركوب الدراجات أو التزلج، فإنهم يبقون أقوياء ونشيطين.

Hobbies also show how people grow. Many children can draw, paint, or write stories now, but when they were younger, they couldn't do these **activities**⁽¹¹⁾ well. Some people can finish puzzles quickly today, but before they could only **place**⁽¹²⁾ a few **pieces**⁽¹³⁾.

تُظهر الهوايات أيضًا كيف ينمو الناس. يستطيع العديد من الأطفال الرسم أو التلوين أو كتابة القصص الآن، ولكن عندما كانوا أصغر سنًا، لم يتمكنوا من القيام بهذه الأنشطة جيدًا. يمكن لبعض الناس إنهاء الألغاز بسرعة اليوم، ولكن في السابق كانوا يستطيعون وضع بضع قطع فقط.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- وقت الفراغ
- ٢- يسترخي
- ٣- يقضي وقت ممتع
- ٤- يبقى بصحة جيدة
- ٥- العمل الجماعي
- ٦- حل الألغاز
- ٧- الصبر
- ٨- الإبداع
- ٩- ركوب الدراجات
- ١٠- التزلج
- ١١- حيوي/نشيط
- ١٢- يضع
- ١٣- قطع

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

In the past, children could spend more time outside running, skating, or **fishing**⁽¹⁴⁾.

Today, we can choose from many hobbies that help us learn skills for life. The **main idea**⁽¹⁵⁾ is simple: hobbies are not only fun, they make us **smarter**⁽¹⁶⁾, stronger, and happier.

Arabic Meaning

- ١٤- الصيد
- ١٥- الفكرة الرئيسية
- ١٦- أذكى

في الماضي، كان يمكن للأطفال قضاء وقت أطول في الخارج في الجري أو التزلج أو صيد الأسماك. اليوم، يمكننا الاختيار من بين العديد من الهوايات التي تساعدنا على تعلم مهارات للحياة. الفكرة الرئيسية بسيطة: الهوايات ليست ممتعة فحسب، بل تجعلنا أكثر ذكاءً وقوة وسعادة.

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

1- In the present في الحاضر

Ex: We use "can" to show what someone is able to do.

- نستخدم "can" لنظهر ما يستطيع شخص ما فعله.

Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثباتات

Subject + can + inf. . فعل في المصدر (يستطيع)

Ex: She can play the piano.

- Omar can speak two languages.
- The children can finish the puzzle quickly.

Negative: النفي

Subject + cannot (can't) + inf. . فعل في المصدر (لا يستطيع)

Ex: He can't ride a bicycle.

- They can't swim well.
- Omar and Ola can't solve puzzles.

Question: السؤال

Can + subject + inf. هل يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word ؟ فعل في المصدر + can + subject + inf كلمة استفهام

Ex: Can Sandy draw a picture?

- Can they sing a song?
- What hobbies can you do right now?

2- In the past في الماضي

Ex: We use "could" to show what someone was able to do in the past.

نستخدم "could" للتعبير عما كان شخص ما قادراً على فعله في الماضي.

Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

Subject + could + inf. (كان يستطيع) . فعل في المصدر

Ex: I could read stories when I was six.

- When I was young, I could solve puzzles very quickly.
- My grandfather could ride a bicycle for many hours without stopping.

Negative: النفي

Subject + could not (couldn't) + inf. (لم يستطع) . فعل في المصدر

Ex: She couldn't draw when she was younger.

- Mazen couldn't play the piano last year.
- When I was young, I couldn't kick the ball.

Question: السؤال

Could + subject + inf. هل كان يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word + could + subject + inf كلمة استفهام فعل في المصدر

Ex: Could Nancy swim well when she was four?

- Could you do crafting with paper last year?
- What hobbies could you do in the past?

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I enjoy before I go to bed because books are relaxing. SB
☐ a reading ☐ b singing ☐ c painting ☐ d coloring
2. My brother likes in the park, but he wears a helmet for safety. SB
☐ a crafting ☐ b cycling ☐ c fishing ☐ d swimming
3. When we play, we must think carefully to find the right piece. SB
☐ a journals ☐ b problem-solving ☐ c puzzles ☐ d teamwork
4. At the school concert, I practiced my favorite song. SB
☐ a reading ☐ b coloring ☐ c painting ☐ d singing
5. She is very good at pictures of flowers and animals. SB
☐ a cycling ☐ b riding ☐ c painting ☐ d fishing
6. Hobbies are important because they help us relax, have fun, and healthy.
☐ a earn ☐ b do ☐ c stay ☐ d take
7. activities with friends brings me a lot of joy.
☐ a Making ☐ b Doing ☐ c Getting ☐ d Watching
8. I ride a bike now. SB
☐ a can ☐ b could ☐ c couldn't ☐ d doesn't
9. She sings very well today, but last year she sing clearly. SB
☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could ☐ d couldn't
10. We play the piano when we were younger, it was hard. SB
☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could ☐ d couldn't
11. He draw nice pictures today, he is taking lessons. SB
☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could ☐ d couldn't
12. When I was five, I swim, but now I can. SB
☐ a can ☐ b could ☐ c can't ☐ d couldn't
13. you help me with this puzzle? It's very difficult. SB
☐ a Can't ☐ b Couldn't ☐ c Can ☐ d Does

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

energetic - Hobbies - relaxing - puzzles - patience

In my free time, I always go cycling. This activity helps me stay healthy, strong, and ①..... When I cycle, I also learn ②..... and safety by wearing a helmet. It is a ③..... way to have fun outside after finishing my schoolwork. ④..... make us better!

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. I can play the piano now, but last year I (could) SB
2. She couldn't swim when she was five, but now she (could) swim well. SB
3. They (can't) ride their bikes today, but when they were young, they couldn't balance. SB
4. We (can) play board games together yesterday because we had no time. SB
5. He can sing very well now, but when he was younger, he (can't). SB
6. She (can't) draw when she was younger. SB
7. Be careful! You (couldn't) ride a bike here; it's not safe.
8. When I was five, I (can) solve simple puzzles, but not hard ones.
9. (Can't) you please help me carry these books? They are heavy.
10. (Can) you ride a bicycle when you were seven years old?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. energetic - us - helps - and - Cycling - strong - stay.

2. stories - can - now - or - draw, - write - children - Many.

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

3. right - can - What - now? - you - do - hobbies.

4. puzzles - today - can - people - quickly - Some - finish.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. i can play football with my friends now

2. could you read stories when you were six

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Hobbies you could do in the past

used to - fun activities - free time

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



arrangement	ترتيب / تنسيق	discussion	مناقشة
friendship	صداقة	agreement	اتفاق
excitement	إثارة / حماس	leadership	قيادة
enjoyment	متعة / استمتاع	creativity	إبداع
care for	يهتم بـ / يعتني بـ		



Other words

كلمات أخرى

classmates	زملاء الدراسة	own	خاص بـ
talent	موهبة	quick	سريع
art room	غرفة الفن (المرسم)	tools	أدوات
reading corner	ركن القراءة	movement	حركة
solution	حل	membership	عضوية
basketball skills	مهارات كرة السلة	argument	جدال / حجة
finally	أخيراً / في النهاية		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

start a hobby club	يبدأ / يؤسس نادٍ للهوايات	On the playground	في الملعب
a group of	مجموعة من	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
share a talent	يشارك بموهبة	at first	في البداية / أولاً
side by side	جنباً إلى جنب	solve a problem	يحل مشكلة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

organize	ينظم / يرتب
decide	يقرر
work	يعمل
face	يواجه

Past ماضٍ

organized
decided
worked
faced

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

meet	يلتقي / يقابل
become	يصبح
lose	يفقد / يخسر

Past ماضٍ

met
became
lost

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 decide to + inf. يقرر أن

Ex: At our School, a group of students **decided to** start a Hobby Club.

2 made + noun + inf. (يجعل) مصدر الفعل

Ex: Her love for reading **made** her classmates want to read more.

3 Would you like to + inf. هل تود أن؟ مصدر الفعل

Ex: **Would you like to** start a hobby club?

Study the following

1 A group of students decided to start a Hobby Club.

قررت مجموعة من الطلاب تأسيس نادٍ للهوايات.

2 Each student would share a special talent.

سيشارك كل طالب بموهبة خاصة.

3 In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings.

في غرفة الفن (الرسم)، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة.

4 On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills.

في الملعب، علّم عمر مهارات كرة السلة.

5 In the library, Laila organized a reading corner.

في المكتبة، نظمت ليلي ركنًا للقراءة.

6 Kareem started a small garden, teaching the enjoyment of caring for plants.

بدأ كريم بإنشاء حديقة صغيرة، مُعلِّمًا متعة رعاية النباتات.

7 The problem was that everyone wanted to meet at the same time.

كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أرادوا أن يلتقوا في الوقت نفسه.

8 After a quick discussion, they had an agreement: each hobby would have its own day.

بعد مناقشة سريعة، توصلوا إلى اتفاق: سيكون لكل هواية يوم خاص بها.

9 The Hobby Club became a place of leadership, creativity, and fun.

أصبح نادي الهوايات مكانًا للقيادة والإبداع والمرح.

Read the story

أقرأ القصة:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



The School Hobby Club نادي الهوايات المدرسي

At our School, a group of students **decided to**⁽¹⁾ start a Hobby Club. The **arrangement**⁽²⁾ was simple: each student would share a special **talent**⁽³⁾. In the **art room**⁽⁴⁾, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. Her **friendship**⁽⁵⁾ with Maya grew stronger as they painted **side by side**⁽⁶⁾. On the **playground**⁽⁷⁾, Omar taught **basketball skills**⁽⁸⁾, and his **excitement**⁽⁹⁾ made others want to join. In the library, Laila **organized**⁽¹⁰⁾ a **reading corner**⁽¹¹⁾. Her love for reading made her **classmates**⁽¹²⁾ want to read more. Finally, Kareem started a small garden, teaching the **enjoyment**⁽¹³⁾ of **caring for**⁽¹⁴⁾ plants.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- قرآن
- ٢- ترتيب
- ٣- موهبة
- ٤- غرفة الفن (المرسوم)
- ٥- صداقة
- ٦- جنباً إلى جنب
- ٧- الملعب
- ٨- مهارات كرة السلة
- ٩- حماسة
- ١٠- نظم
- ١١- ركن للقراءة
- ١٢- زملاء الدراسة
- ١٣- متعة
- ١٤- رعاية
- ١٥- في نفس الوقت
- ١٦- مناقشة
- ١٧- اتفاق
- ١٨- حل
- ١٩- القيادة
- ٢٠- الإبداع

في مدرستنا، قررت مجموعة من الطلاب تأسيس نادٍ للهوايات. كان الترتيب بسيطاً: يشارك كل طالب بموهبة خاصة. في غرفة الفن (المرسوم)، عرضت سارة لوحاتها الجميلة. نمت صداقتها مع مايا وأصبحت أقوى وهما ترسمان جنباً إلى جنب. في الملعب، علّم عمر مهارات كرة السلة، وحماسه جعل الآخرين يرغبون في الانضمام. في المكتبة، نظمت ليلى ركنًا للقراءة. حبها للقراءة جعل زملاء دراستها يرغبون في قراءة المزيد. أخيراً، بدأ كريم بإنشاء حديقة صغيرة، معلماً متعة رعاية النباتات.

At first, the problem was that everyone wanted to meet **at the same time**⁽¹⁵⁾. After a quick **discussion**⁽¹⁶⁾, they had an **agreement**⁽¹⁷⁾: each hobby would have its own day. The **solution**⁽¹⁸⁾ worked, and soon the Hobby Club became a place of **leadership**⁽¹⁹⁾, **creativity**⁽²⁰⁾, and fun.

في البداية، كانت المشكلة أن الجميع أرادوا أن يلتقوا في الوقت نفسه. بعد مناقشة سريعة، توصلوا إلى اتفاق: سيكون لكل هواية يوم خاص بها. نجح الحل، وسرعان ما أصبح نادي الهوايات مكاناً للقيادة والإبداع والمرح.

Word Building skills



(What is a suffix?) ما اللاحقة؟

☉ A suffix is a group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or make a new word.

☉ اللاحقة هي مجموعة من الأحرف تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو إنشاء كلمة جديدة.

The suffixes **-ment/ -ship**

1 -ment: changes the verb into a noun يحول الفعل إلى اسم

enjoy	يستمتع	→	enjoyment	يستمتع
agree	يتفق	→	agreement	اتفاق
move	يتحرك	→	movement	حركة
excite	يثير	→	excitement	إثارة/ حماس
argue	يُجادل	→	argument	جدال
develop	يطور	→	development	تطوير

- لا حظ: عند نطق كلمة بها اللاحقة (-ment) يكون التشديد على الكلمة الأساسية وليس على اللاحقة

EN-joy-ment ✓ (not en-JOY-ment ✗)

2 -ship: changes the noun into another noun يحول الاسم إلى اسم آخر

friend	صديق	→	friendship	صداقة
member	عضو	→	membership	عضوية
leader	قائد	→	leadership	قيادة

- لا حظ: عند نطق كلمة بها اللاحقة (-ship) يكون التشديد على الكلمة الأساسية وليس على اللاحقة

FRIEND-ship ✓ (not friend-SHIP ✗)

Checkpoint Exercise (✓)

1 Circle the words that have the suffix -ship or -ment:

ضع دائرة حول اللاحقة:

enjoyment	book	friendship	play	step
movement	cat	leadership	garden	painting
membership	excitement	agreement	argument	hobby

2 Add the suitable suffix to each word:

ضع لاحقة مناسبة:

- excite →
- move →
- enjoy →

- leader →
- friend →

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The club members all wanted to work in the art room at different times.	☐	☐
2. Ali decided to organize a schedule for the club.	☐	☐
3. There was a long argument.	☐	☐
4. The arrangement brought excitement to the club members.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The children jumped with _____ when they saw the ice cream truck. SB
 a friendship b argument c leadership d excitement
- Good _____ is important for a team to succeed. SB
 a enjoyment b leadership c agreement d excitement
- The _____ of the new project was announced by the manager. SB
 a agreement b development c excitement d movement
- Omar taught basketball _____ in the Hobby Club. SB
 a paintings b skills c corners d plants
- Sara and Maya painted together in the _____. SB
 a library b station c kitchen d art room
- The students _____ a problem that they wanted to meet at the same time. SB
 a organized b decided c worked d faced
- The art club helps us use our _____. SB
 a argument b discussion c development d creativity
- In the garden club, we learn to care _____ plants.
 a with b on c to d for
- They finished their work _____ the same time.
 a on b at c with d in

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار،

movement - leadership - art room - playground - excitement

Yamen showed great leadership. He decided to organize a sports day on the ① He taught basketball skills with great ② His classmates loved it. Good ③ made the activity fun for everyone. It was a wonderful day of ④ and games.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا،

1. reading - Noha - In - library, - corner. - a - the - organized.

2. student - share - talent - special - a - would - Each.

3. at - wanted - to - time - meet - Everyone - same - the .

4. a place - became - and - fun - The Hobby Club - creativity, - of .

5. Hobby Club - start - They - decided - to - a.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي،

1. sara showed her beautiful paintings

2. can you read a book

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



interests	اهتمامات	progress	تقدم
gardening	زراعة الحدائق	survey	استبيان
exciting	مثير	pot	وعاء زراعة
great	عظيم	perfect	مثالي
truly	حقاً / بصدق	immediately	فوراً / على الفور
nature	الطبيعة	opinion	رأي
keyboard	لوحة المفاتيح / الاورج	experience	خبرة / تجربة
seeds	بذور	comics	قصص مصورة
soil	تربة زراعية	during	أثناء / خلال

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

build strong friendship	يبنى صداقة قوية	step by step	خطوة بخطوة
follow steps	يتبع الخطوات	get better	يتحسن
take a moment	يستغرق / يأخذ لحظة	do a survey	يُجري استبياناً
match your interests	يتطابق مع اهتماماتك	play a musical instrument	يعزف على آلة موسيقية
think about	يفكر في	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

achieve	ينجز / يحقق
match	يطابق / يتناسب مع
collect	يجمع

Past ماضٍ

achieved
matched
collected

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bring	يحضر
build	يبنى
begin	يبدأ

Past ماضٍ

brought
built
began

Definitions تعريفات

survey استبيان

a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas, opinions, or experiences

مجموعة من الأسئلة التي يجيب عليها الناس لمشاركة أفكارهم أو آرائهم أو تجاربهم.

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 It's time to + inf حان الوقت لـ

Ex: It's time to get the things you need to begin.

2 decide on + noun يقرر أن

Ex: If you decide on music, you might need an instrument like a small keyboard or guitar.

3 How often ? كم عدد المرات ؟

وفي الاجابة نستخدم:

once - مرة واحدة - twice - مرتين - three, four, times (a week - a month...)

Ex: How often do you spend time on your favorite hobby? - Twice a week.

4 Sequencing words كلمات التسلسل

help us show the order of steps or events in text. They tell the reader what happens first, what comes next and what happens at the end.

نُساعدنا على إظهار ترتيب الخطوات أو الأحداث في النص. فهي تُخبر القارئ بما يحدث أولاً، وما يلي ذلك، وما يحدث في النهاية.

First, → use it for the beginning step.

أولاً، → نستخدمها للخطوة الأولى في البداية

Next, → use it for the second step.

بعد ذلك، → نستخدمها للخطوة الثانية

Then, → use it for the mid steps.

ثم، → نستخدمها للخطوات المتوسطة

After that → use it for more mid steps.

بعد هذا، → نستخدمها للمزيد من الخطوات المتوسطة

Finally, → use it for the last step.

أخيراً، → نستخدمها للخطوة الأخيرة.

Study the following

- 1 A new hobby brings you enjoyment and helps build strong friendship with others.

تجلب لك الهواية الجديدة المتعة وتساعد على بناء صداقة قوية مع الآخرين.

- 2 First, take a moment to think about what you truly love.

أولاً، خذ لحظة للتفكير فيما تحبه حقاً.

- 3 Choose a hobby that matches your interests.

اختر هواية تتطابق مع اهتماماتك.

- 4 Next, it's time to get the things you need to begin.

تالياً، حان الوقت للحصول على الأشياء التي تحتاجها للبدء.

- 5 If you decide on music, you might need an instrument like a small keyboard or guitar.

إذا قررت اختيار الموسيقى، فقد تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية مثل لوحة مفاتيح (أورج) صغيرة أو جيتار.

- 6 If you choose gardening, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.

إذا اخترت زراعة الحدايق، فسوف تحتاج إلى بذور وتربة وأصيص صغير.

- 7 Then, start practicing your new hobby!

ثم، ابدأ بممارسة هوايتك الجديدة!

- 8 Don't try to be perfect immediately; learning takes time.

لا تحاول أن تكون مثالياً فوراً؛ فالتعلم يستغرق وقتاً.

- 9 After that, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing progress.

بعد ذلك، مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لترى تقدمك المذهل.

- 10 Finally, enjoy what you have achieved!

أخيراً، استمتع بما حققته!

- 11 Hobbies make life exciting and fun.

الهوايات تجعل الحياة مثيرة وممتعة.

- 12 Sharing your excitement makes life better!

مشاركة حماسك تجعل الحياة أفضل!

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Do you want to try something exciting and new? Starting a great hobby is easy! It brings you enjoyment and helps build strong friendship with others. Follow these four simple **steps** ⁽¹⁾:

هل تريد أن تجرب شيئاً مثيراً وجديداً؟ إن بدء هواية رائعة أمر سهل! إنها تجلب لك المتعة وتساعد على بناء صداقة قوية مع الآخرين. اتبع هذه الخطوات الأربع البسيطة:

First, take a moment to think about what you truly love. What makes you happy in your free time? Do you like music 🎵, art 🎨, **nature** ⁽²⁾ 🌳, or movement? Choose a hobby that **matches** ⁽³⁾ your **interests** ⁽⁴⁾, like drawing, reading, or cycling.

أولاً، خذ لحظة للتفكير فيما تحبه حقاً. ما الذي يجعلك سعيداً في وقت فراغك؟ هل تحب الموسيقى، أو الفن، أو الطبيعة، أو الحركة؟ اختر هواية تتطابق مع اهتماماتك، مثل الرسم أو القراءة أو ركوب الدراجات.

Next, it's time to get the things you need to begin. If you decide on music, you might need an **instrument** ⁽⁵⁾ like a small keyboard or guitar. If you choose **gardening** ⁽⁶⁾, you will need seeds, soil, and a small pot.

تالياً، حان الوقت للحصول على الأشياء التي تحتاجها للبدء. إذا قررت اختيار الموسيقى، فقد تحتاج إلى آلة موسيقية مثل لوحة مفاتيح (أورغ) صغيرة أو جيتار. وإذا اخترت زراعة الحدائق، فسوف تحتاج إلى بذور وتربة وأصيص صغير.

Then, start practicing your new hobby! Don't try to be perfect **immediately** ⁽⁷⁾; learning takes time. Play simple songs at first, or plant a small seed in a single pot. After that, practice your hobby step by step to see your amazing **progress** ⁽⁸⁾.

ثم، ابدأ بممارسة هوايتك الجديدة! لا تحاول أن تكون مثالياً فوراً؛ فالتعلم يستغرق وقتاً. اعزف أغان بسيطة في البداية، أو ازرع بذرة صغيرة في أصيص واحد. بعد ذلك، مارس هوايتك خطوة بخطوة لترى تقدمك المذهل.

Finally, enjoy what you have **achieved** ⁽⁹⁾! Show your music to your family, or share a picture of your growing plant with a friend. Hobbies make life exciting and fun, and sharing your excitement makes it even better!

أخيراً، استمتع بما حققته! اعرض موسيقاك على عائلتك، أو شارك صورة لنبتتك النامية مع صديق. الهوايات تجعل الحياة مثيرة وممتعة، ومشاركة حماسك تجعلها أفضل!

Arabic Meaning

- ١- خطوات
- ٢- الطبيعة
- ٣- تتطابق مع
- ٤- اهتمامات
- ٥- آلة موسيقية
- ٦- زراعة الحدائق
- ٧- فوراً
- ٨- على الفور
- ٩- حققت

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Rayan's great in piano makes him feel proud.
☐ a seeds ☐ b progress ☐ c survey ☐ d comics
2. We will a survey to learn about popular hobbies.
☐ a do ☐ b think ☐ c plant ☐ d feel
3. is a relaxing hobby that connects you with nature.
☐ a Reading comics ☐ b Cycling ☐ c Painting ☐ d Gardening
4. We a strong friendship during our art class.
☐ a matched ☐ b thought ☐ c built ☐ d collected
5. Learn step step to get better at your hobby.
☐ a by ☐ b to ☐ c from ☐ d for
6. You must the steps to solve the puzzle.
☐ a match ☐ b build ☐ c collect ☐ d follow
7. Tayem wants to better at playing basketball.
☐ a make ☐ b take ☐ c get ☐ d have
8. This hobby club is perfect because it matches my
☐ a interests ☐ b comics ☐ c progress ☐ d steps
9. She can play a musical called the violin.
☐ a nature ☐ b keyboard ☐ c experience ☐ d instrument
10. I feel when I finish a painting.
☐ a sad ☐ b shy ☐ c proud ☐ d angry

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

progress - Finally - Next - matched - followed

We decided to do a survey to find out our classmates' interests. First, we had to achieve a perfect set of questions. ①, it was time to collect the answers and opinions during the week. We ② the results to see the most exciting hobby. ③, we used the data to start a hobby club. Everyone felt proud of the amazing ④ we made step by step.

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. hobby - A new - friendship - with - build - strong - helps - others.

2. interests - Choose - a - hobby - matches - that - your.

3. Hobbies - fun - and - make - exciting - life.

4. have - achieved - Finally - enjoy - you - what.

5. makes - better - life - Sharing - your - excitement.

4 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

How you started your favorite hobby

animals - nature - step by step

Review



on Unit 1

Key vocabulary



playing board games

لعب ألعاب الطاولة (الألعاب اللوحية)



cycling

ركوب الدراجات



skating

التزلج



painting

الرسم



singing

الغناء



solving puzzles

حل الألغاز



playing the piano

العزف على البيانو



crafting with paper

الحرف اليدوية بالورق

hobby

هواية

creativity

الإبداع

talent show

عرض المواهب

strong

قوى

drawing

الرسم

energetic

حيوى / نشيط

free time

وقت الفراغ

board games

العاب لوحية

teamwork

العمل الجماعى

arrangement

ترتيب / تنسيق

problem-solving

حل المشكلات

friendship

صداقة

patience

الصبر

Language in Use

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

1- In the present في الحاضر

Ex: We use "can" to show what someone is able to do.

- نستخدم "can" لنظهر ما يستطيع شخص ما فعله.

Form: التكوين

Subject + can + inf. فعل في المصدر (يستطيع)

Ex: She can play the piano.

Negative: النفي

Subject + cannot (can't) + inf. فعل في المصدر (لا يستطيع)

Ex: He can't ride a bicycle.

- They can't swim well.

Question: السؤال

Can + subject + inf. هل يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word فعل في المصدر + can + subject + inf كلمة استفهام

Ex: Can Sandy draw a picture?

- What hobbies can you do right now?

2- In the past في الماضي

Ex: We use "could" to show what someone was able to do in the past.

- نستخدم "could" للتعبير عما كان شخص ما قادراً على فعله في الماضي.

Form: التكوين

Subject + could + inf. فعل في المصدر (كان يستطيع)

Ex: I could read stories when I was six.

Negative: النفي

Subject + could not (couldn't) + inf. فعل في المصدر (لم يستطيع)

Ex: She couldn't draw when she was younger.

Question: السؤال

Could + subject + inf. هل كان يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word فعل في المصدر + could + subject + inf كلمة استفهام

Ex: Could Nancy swim well when she was four?

- What hobbies could you do in the past?



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Your favorite hobby

My favorite hobby is reading and writing stories. In the talent show, I would perform by telling an amazing story that I wrote, using different voices. I would also show a big picture for the story. This would be a creative way to share my hobby.

2

Lesson 2

Hobbies you could do in the past

In the past, I could spend hours outside. I could ride my bicycle in the park. I could also draw pictures and write short stories in my journals. Sometimes, I couldn't finish difficult puzzles. I used to do those fun activities in my free time..

3

Lessons 4&5

How you started your favorite hobby

First, I decided to draw animals because I love nature. Next, I bought tools like pencils and paper. Then, I practiced step by step. Finally, I achieved drawing a bird, and I feel proud of my progress.

4

Test Al-Azhar

A school talent show

Our school had a wonderful talent show last week. Many students came to perform and share their special talents. I saw amazing acts like singing, dancing, and playing the piano. At the end, everyone felt great joy, and it was a very exciting day.

5

Test on Unit 1

A hobby you would like to try in the future

In the future, I want to try fishing. It seems like a very relaxing hobby in nature. I will learn patience and enjoy the quiet outdoors. It will be a special and peaceful activity for my free time. I think it will bring me great joy.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- When Zain goes cycling, he stays strong and
☐ a quiet ☐ b sleepy ☐ c careful ☐ d energetic
- Zain loves to ride his bicycle in the park on
☐ a Mondays ☐ b weekdays ☐ c weekends ☐ d holidays
- Cycling is a simple and activity.
☐ a difficult ☐ b exciting ☐ c boring ☐ d relaxing

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

park - How often - crafting - practice

- Omar** : What's your favorite hobby?
Laila : I love ① with paper. It's so amazing to make something.
Omar : Where do you do it?
Laila : I usually do it at home or in the ②
Omar : ③ do you craft?
Laila : I ④ three times a week.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- I get a lot of from reading a good book. SB
☐ a friendship ☐ b enjoyment ☐ c leadership ☐ d movement
- Which hobby is most likely to help you improve your problem-solving skills? SB
☐ a painting ☐ b singing
☐ c solving puzzles ☐ d skating
- I come to the party yesterday because I was sick. SB
☐ a can ☐ b can't ☐ c could ☐ d couldn't
- She is a great musician. She play three different instruments. SB
☐ a could ☐ b can ☐ c couldn't ☐ d can't

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. I can play the piano when I was seven. (.....)
2. I like sports that have a lot of move. (.....)
3. We couldn't go outside right now. It's raining. (.....)
4. Can you swim when you were a child? (.....)

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

The school concert was coming. Our art room was busy! First, we decided to do crafting with paper to make decorations. Next, we collected our tools—paper, glue, and colors. Then, we worked side by side. After that, we made amazing stars and flowers. During the work, we listened to music. It was very relaxing. Finally, we put our crafts around the hall. Seeing our work at the concert made us feel proud. It was a perfect way to use our creativity.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The students used paint and brushes to make their decorations.	☐	☐
2. The students felt proud when they saw their crafts at the concert.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. What was the first step the students decided on?
 - a Collected tools b Did crafting c Put crafts d Listened to music
4. What did the students make after working side by side?
 - a Small pots b Short stories
 - c Stars and flowers d New hobbies
5. What did the students listen to while they were working?
 - a Loud noise b The teacher c Music d The news

6 Write a paragraph of about 4 sentences about: اكتب فقرة من (4) جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

A school talent show

wonderful - perform - amazing - joy

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. First, Sandy decided on drawing as her new hobby.	☐	☐
2. Sandy got the seeds, soil, and pot before planting the seeds.	☐	☐
3. She learned to care for them during the week.	☐	☐
4. She felt proud when she saw the green plants.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Which activity involves using brushes and colors to create a picture? SB
 a cycling b skating c painting d solving puzzles
- After a long discussion, the club members finally reached a/an
 a agreement b excitement c enjoyment d movement
- My grandfather said that when he was young, he afford a bicycle. SB
 a can b can't c don't d couldn't
- We see our progress when we practice.
 a can b can't c could d couldn't

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

got - creativity - hobby - Then - built

When I was young, I used to draw simple pictures. I was good at drawing animals. ①, I started to learn step by step. Now I can paint beautiful scenes. I ② better at using colors. Finally, I feel proud of my ③ Drawing is my main ④ and it makes me happy.

Unit 1 Hobbies Make Us Shine!

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. solve - Bassem - quickly - can - puzzles - difficult.

2. cycling - park - the - skating - and - loves - Nelly.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. 'you can borrow my tools for your crafting

2. Where did Sara and maya paint together

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A hobby you would like to try in the future

relaxing - patience - free time



At the Doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Express their opinions and thoughts on health-related topics.

يعبر الطلاب عن آرائهم وأفكارهم حول مواضيع متعلقة بالصحة.

- Tell a personal experience or a story related to feeling sick.

يروى الطلاب تجربة شخصية أو قصة متعلقة بالشعور بالمرض.

- Present health tips they have created to their classmates.

يقدم الطلاب نصائح صحية قاموا بإنشائها لزملائهم في الصف.

Listening:

- Identify key information and main ideas from a dialog about a visit to a doctor's clinic.

يحدد الطلاب المعلومات الأساسية والأفكار الرئيسية من حوار حول زيارة لعيادة الطبيب.

- Recall specific details and advice given in a conversation.

يتذكر الطلاب تفاصيل محددة ونصائح قُدمت في محادثة.

- Recognize and recall vocabulary related to illnesses and the clinic.

يتعرف الطلاب ويتذكرون المفردات المتعلقة بالأمراض والعيادة.

Reading:

- Understand informational texts.

يفهم الطلاب النصوص المعلوماتية.

- Extract specific information from a text to answer questions.

يستخرج الطلاب معلومات محددة من النص للإجابة على الأسئلة.

- Follow written instructions and advice found in a text, such as health rules.

يتبع الطلاب التعليمات والنصائح المكتوبة الموجودة في نص ما، مثل القواعد الصحية.

Writing:

- Use grammar rule to give advice or talk about obligations.

يستخدم الطلاب قواعد نحوية لإعطاء النصيحة أو التحدث عن الالتزامات.

- Write a short email including a subject line, greeting, and a brief message.

يكتب الطلاب بريداً إلكترونياً قصيراً يتضمن سطر الموضوع، والتحية، ورسالة موجزة.

- Create short, clear health tips for a bookmark.

ينشئ الطلاب نصائح صحية قصيرة وواضحة لعلامة مرجعية.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



sore throat

التهاب الحلق



headache

صداع



fever

حمى



cough

كحة (سعال)



stomachache

ألم في المعدة

clinic

عيادة

check-up

فحص طبي

examination room

غرفة الفحص

serious

خطير

pharmacy

صيدلية

medicine

دواء

hurt

يؤذي / يؤلم



Other words

كلمات أخرى

body

جسم

stomach

معدة / بطن

warm liquids

سوائل دافئة

advice

نصيحة

nurse

ممرضة

toothache

ألم الأسنان

broken leg

ساق مكسورة

high blood pressure

ارتفاع ضغط الدم

rules

قواعد

pain

الم



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

feel sick/ well/ tired

يشعر بالمرض / يتحسن / بالتعب

look weak

يبدو ضعيفاً

at the clinic

في العيادة

take care of

يعتني بـ / يهتم بـ

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
rest	يستريح
love	يحب

Past ماض	
rested	
loved	

Present مضارع	
drink	يشرب
buy	يشترى
feel	يشعر
come	يأتي
hurt	يؤلم

Past ماض	
drank	
bought	
felt	
came	
hurt	

Definitions

تعريفات

clinic	عيادة	a place where doctors help sick people feel better مكان يساعد فيه الأطباء المرضى على الشعور بتحسن.
pharmacy	صيدلية	a place where you buy your medicine مكان تشتري منه الدواء.
headache	صداع	pain in the head ألم في الرأس

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 What's wrong?

ما خطبك / ما المشكلة؟ (تستخدم عندما تلاحظ أن الشخص يبدو متعباً أو غير سعيد)

Ex: Mother: What's wrong?

Fady: I have a headache and a cough.

- How are you feeling today?

كيف تشعر اليوم؟ (تستخدم للاستفسار عن الصحة)

Ex: Doctor : Well, Fady, how are you feeling today?

Fady: I have a headache and a cough.

وللاجابة عما نشعر به ونحن مرضى عادة ما نستخدم have/ has كالتالي:

I, We, They, You + have + اسم المرض

He, She, It + has + اسم المرض

Ex: I have a fever.

- He has a stomachache.

2 Let's + inf. (هيا بنا) مصدر الفعل

Ex: Let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine.

Study the following

- 1 I feel so tired. My body hurts. أشعر بتعب شديد. جسمي يؤلمني.
- 2 You don't look well. أنت لا تبدو بخير.
- 3 I have a headache and a cough. I also have a sore throat and a fever. لدي صداع وكحة. ولدي أيضاً التهاب في الحلق وحمى.
- 4 We have to go to the doctor. يجب علينا الذهاب إلى الطبيب.
- 5 Please come to the examination room. من فضلك تفضل بالدخول إلى غرفة الفحص.
- 6 You look a little weak, but it's not serious. أنت تبدو ضعيفاً قليلاً، لكن الأمر ليس خطيراً.
- 7 You must rest and drink warm liquids. يجب عليك أن تستريح وتشرب سوائل دافئة.
- 8 You have to take care of yourself. You'll feel better soon. يجب عليك أن تعتني بنفسك. ستشعر بالتحسن قريباً.
- 9 Let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine. لنذهب إلى الصيدلية للحصول على دوائك.
- 10 I hope I feel better quickly. أتمنى أن أشعر بالتحسن بسرعة.
- 11 I must take my medicine and rest. يجب علي أن أتناول دوائي وأستريح.

Listen and read

استمع واقرأ:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Fady's Check-Up فحص فادي الطبي

Fady : Ah... I feel so tired. My body hurts⁽¹⁾.

فادي: أه... أشعر بتعب شديد. جسمي يؤلمني.

Mother : You don't look well⁽²⁾, Fady. What's wrong⁽³⁾?

الأم: أنت لا تبدو بخير يا فادي. ما خطبك؟

Fady : I have a headache⁽⁴⁾ and a cough⁽⁵⁾. I also have a sore throat⁽⁶⁾ and a fever⁽⁷⁾.

فادي: لدي صداع وكحة. ولدي أيضاً التهاب في الحلق وحمى.

Mother : Oh no! We have to go to the doctor.

الأم: يا إلهي! يجب علينا الذهاب إلى الطبيب.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- يؤلم
- ٢- يبدو جيداً
- ٣- ما خطبك؟
- ٤- صداع
- ٥- كحة
- ٦- التهاب في الحلق
- ٧- حمى

(At the clinic) (في العيادة)

Nurse : Hello, Fady. Please come to the **examination room**⁽⁸⁾.

المرضة: مرحباً يا فادي. من فضلك تفضل بالدخول إلى غرفة الفحص.

Doctor : Well, Fady, how are you feeling today?

الطبيب: حسناً يا فادي، كيف تشعر اليوم؟

Fady : Not good, Doctor. My **stomach**⁽⁹⁾ hurts.

فادي: لست بخير يا دكتور. معدتي تؤلمني.

Doctor : You look a little **weak**⁽¹⁰⁾, but it's not **serious**⁽¹¹⁾. You must rest and drink **warm liquids**⁽¹²⁾. No ice cream for three days.

الطبيب: أنت تبدو ضعيفاً قليلاً، لكن الأمر ليس خطيراً. يجب عليك أن تستريح وتشرب سوائل دافئة.

ممنوع تناول الآيس كريم لمدة ثلاثة أيام.

Fady : Oh no! But I love ice cream!

فادي: يا إلهي! لكنني أحب الآيس كريم!

Doctor : I know, but you have to **take care of**⁽¹³⁾ yourself. You'll feel better soon.

الطبيب: أعلم، لكن يجب عليك أن تعتني بنفسك. ستشعر بالتحسن قريباً.

Mother : Thank you, Doctor. Now, Fady, let's go to the **pharmacy**⁽¹⁴⁾ to get your **medicine**⁽¹⁵⁾.

الأم: شكراً لك يا دكتور. الآن يا فادي، لنذهب إلى الصيدلية للحصول على دوائك.

Fady : I hope I feel better quickly. I must take my medicine and rest.

فادي: أأمل أن أشعر بالتحسن بسرعة. يجب عليّ أن أتناول دوائي وأستريح.

Arabic Meaning

٨- غرفة الفحص

٩- معدة

١٠- ضعيف

١١- خطير

١٢- سوائل دافئة

١٣- يعتنى بـ

١٤- صيدلية

١٥- دواء

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Fady's mother took him to the because he felt sick. SB
 a park b school c clinic d restaurant
2. "....." is a place where you can buy medicine. SB
 a Station b School c Field d Pharmacy
3. "....." means pain in the head. SB
 a Stomachache b Toothache c Headache d Fever
4. If you have a, your body feels very hot.
 a fever b cough c headache d sore throat
5. He went to the dentist because of a terrible
 a headache b toothache c stomachache d cough
6. A nurse will take care you at the hospital.
 a at b in c by d of
7. Mariam's mother took her for a because she had a cough.
 a check-up b picnic c trip d concert
8. Selim had a fever and needed to go to the hospital.
 a well b weak c serious d good
9. They a fever. SB
 a has b have c are d is
10. I a sore throat. SB
 a have b has c am d is
11. She a cough. SB
 a is b has c are d have

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

clinic - hurt - body - rest - liquids

To stay healthy, we must listen to good advice. We should drink warm ① when we have a cold. We must ② when we feel tired. If we have a headache or a fever, we should see a doctor at the ③ Following these simple rules helps take care of our ④

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية :

My grandfather does not feel well. He often has a headache and feels very tired. He went to the clinic. The doctor checks his body. He has high blood pressure. The doctor gives him important advice and new rules. He must eat healthy food, rest well, and take his medicine every day. We will help him **take care of** his health. The pharmacy has all his medicine.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The passage is mainly about
 a a visit to the pharmacy b grandfather's broken leg
 c health rules for high blood pressure d grandfather's hobby
- The phrase "**take care of**" is similar in meaning to
 a look after b forget about c feel sick d give advice

B. Answer the following questions:

- What are two things the grandfather must do to take care of his health?

- How will the family help take care of grandfather's health?

- Why did the grandfather go to the clinic?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا :

- throat - a - have - fever - and - I - sore - a.

- to - examination - room - Please - come - the.

- to - doctor - go - have - We - the - to.

Unit 2 At the Doctor's

4. liquids - and - warm - must - rest - drink - You.

5. get - the pharmacy - to - medicine - Let's - go - to.

6. serious - weak, - not - You - a little - but - it's - look.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what rules can help us stay healthy

2. i must take my medicine and rest

6 Write a text of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Some advice to stay healthy

check-up - take care of - medicine

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



first aid kit	صندوق / حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية	cuts	جروح / قُطوع
bandages	ضمادات	bruises	كدمات
plasters	لاصقات طبية	injured	مُصاب / جريح



Other words

كلمات أخرى

waiting room	غرفة الانتظار	dangerous	خطير
nurse's room	غرفة الممرضة	ready	جاهز
accident	حادثة	full	تام / كامل
scissors	مقص	parents	الوالدان
inside	في الداخل	safely	بأمان
right away	فوراً / على الفور	locked	مغلق (بالمفتاح) / مُقفل
permission	إذن / تصريح		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير و حروف جر وعبارات

go home	يذهب إلى المنزل	stay safe	يبقى آمناً
need for	يحتاج إلى	be careful	يكن حذراً
get hurt	يتأذى / يُصاب	follow health habits	يتبع العادات الصحية
worry about	يقلق بشأن	learn first aid	يتعلم الإسعافات الأولية
make sure	يتأكد	plenty of	الكثير من

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماض	Present مضارع	Past ماض
check / يفحص / يتحقق من	checked	tell / يخبر	told
call / يتصل	called	keep / يحافظ على	kept
ignore / يتجاهل	ignored	have / has / لديه / عنده	had
avoid / يتجنب	avoided		
cough / يسعل / يكح	coughed		

Definitions

تعريفات

nurse's room	غرفة الممرضة	a place where students go when they feel sick at school
nurse	ممرضة	a person who gives you medicine at school شخص يعطيك الدواء في المدرسة
first aid kit	صندوق / حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية	a box in the nurse's room that has everything needed for small accidents. صندوق في غرفة الممرضة يحتوي على كل ما يلزم للحوادث البسيطة
waiting room	غرفة الانتظار	a place in the hospital where people sit until they see the doctor مكان في المستشفى يجلس فيه الناس حتى يروا الطبيب

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 There is + اسم مفرد يوجد للمفرد

Ex: At our school, there is a big first aid kit in the nurse's room.

2 There are + اسم جمع يوجد للجمع

Ex: There are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises.

3 know how to + inf. فعل في المصدر يعرف كيف

Ex: Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help.

4 should/ shouldn't + inf. فعل في المصدر ينبغي / ينبغي ألا (تستخدم لإعطاء النصيحة)

Ex: You should tell the nurse or doctor at the clinic when you feel sick at school.

Study the following

- 1 When you feel sick at school, you should tell the nurse or doctor at the clinic.

عندما تشعر بالمرض في المدرسة، يجب عليك إخبار الممرضة أو الطبيب في العيادة.

- 2 At our school, there's a big first aid kit in the nurse's room.

في مدرستنا، يوجد صندوق إسعافات أولية كبير في غرفة الممرضة.

- 3 The nurse's room has everything we need for small accidents.

تحتوي غرفة الممرضة على كل ما نحتاجه للحوادث الصغيرة.

- 4 There are bandages, plasters, scissors, and medicine for cuts and bruises.

يوجد ضمادات، ولاصقات طبية، ومقص، ودواء للجروح والكدمات.

- 5 Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is injured.

يجب على الطلاب إخبار المعلم أو الممرضة عندما يكون شخص ما مصاباً.

- 6 We mustn't open the first aid kit without permission.

يجب ألا نفتح صندوق الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن.

- 7 Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full.

يجب على الممرضات التأكد من أن الصندوق نظيف وجاهز وكامل دائماً.

- 8 Nurses must call parents if a student feels too sick.

يجب على الممرضات الاتصال بالوالدين إذا شعر طالب ما بمرض شديد.

- 9 The nurse always knows how to help the students.

الممرضة تعرف دائماً كيفية مساعدة الطلاب.

- 10 The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school.

يساعد صندوق الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء بأمان في المدرسة.

- 11 We must all be careful and play safely, so we don't get hurt.

يجب علينا جميعاً أن نكون حذرين وأن نلعب بأمان، لكي لا نتأذى.

Read the following text

اقرأ النص:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:

**The First Aid Kit at School** صندوق الإسعافات الأولية في المدرسة

At our school, there's a big **first aid kit**⁽¹⁾ in the nurse's room. It has everything we might need for small **accidents**⁽²⁾. Inside, there are **bandages**⁽³⁾, **plasters**⁽⁴⁾, **scissors**⁽⁵⁾, and medicine for **cuts**⁽⁶⁾ and **bruises**⁽⁷⁾.

في مدرستنا، يوجد صندوق إسعافات أولية كبير في غرفة الممرضة. يحتوي على كل ما قد نحتاجه للحوادث الصغيرة. في الداخل، يوجد ضمادات، ولاصقات طبية، ومقص، ودواء للجروح والكدمات.

If a student **gets hurt**⁽⁸⁾, the nurse has to **check**⁽⁹⁾ the first aid kit and help them right away. Students must tell a teacher or the nurse when someone is **injured**⁽¹⁰⁾. We mustn't open the first aid kit without **permission**⁽¹¹⁾ because some things inside can be **dangerous**⁽¹²⁾.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- صندوق إسعافات أولية
- ٢- حوادث
- ٣- ضمادات
- ٤- لاصقات طبية
- ٥- مقص
- ٦- جروح
- ٧- كدمات
- ٨- تآذى
- ٩- يفحص
- ١٠- مصاب
- ١١- إذن
- ١٢- خطيرة

إذا تآذى طالب، يجب على الممرضة فحص صندوق الإسعافات الأولية ومساعدته فوراً. يجب على

الطلاب إخبار معلم أو الممرضة عندما يكون شخص ما مصاباً. يجب ألا نفتح صندوق الإسعافات الأولية دون إذن، لأن بعض الأشياء في الداخل يمكن أن تكون خطيرة.

Nurses must make sure the kit is always clean, ready, and full. They also must call parents if a student feels too sick. Students don't have to worry, because the nurse always knows how to help.

يجب على الممرضات التأكد من أن الصندوق نظيف وجاهز و كامل دائماً. ويجب عليهن أيضاً الاتصال بالوالدين إذا شعر طالب بمرض شديد. لا يجب على الطلاب القلق، لأن الممرضة تعرف دائماً كيفية المساعدة.

The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school - but we must all remember to be careful and play safely so we don't get hurt!

يساعد صندوق الإسعافات الأولية الجميع على البقاء بأمان في المدرسة — لكن يجب علينا جميعاً أن نتذكر أن نكون حذرين وأن نلعب بأمان حتى لا نتآذى!

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

We use these to talk about rules or things we should do.

نستخدمهم للحديث عن القواعد و الأشياء التي يجب فعلها

Ex: Students have to wash their hands.

- You must drink water.

1 Has to / Have to

A Affirmative يضطر أن has to/ have to

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (has to/ have to) when it's necessary to do something.

• نستخدم (has to/ have to) عندما يكون من الضروري فعل أمر ما

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **has to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

Ex: I **have to** see the doctor because I have a fever

- She **has to drink** warm liquids for her sore throat.

- Children **have to get** enough sleep every night.

B Negative لا يضطر أن don't have to/ doesn't have to

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (doesn't/don't have to) to talk about things that are not necessary.

• نستخدم (doesn't/don't have to) عندما يكون فعل شيء غير ضروري (لا يوجد إلزام فلكليك حرية الاختيار)

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **don't have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **doesn't have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

Ex: You **don't have to stay** in bed if you only have a small headache.

- He **doesn't have to go** to the pharmacy; his mother will buy the medicine.

- My brother **doesn't have to see** the doctor for a small cough..

2 Must

A Affirmative يجب أن must

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation.

• نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة (ما يجب علينا فعله) وعادة ما تكون إلزام قاعدة مهمة (نصيحة قوية)

Unit 2 At the Doctor's

Form: التكوين

Subject + **must** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex: We **must wash** our hands before eating food.

- She **must go** to the clinic if the pain is serious.
- Patients **must follow** the doctor's advice to get better.

B Negative النفي **mustn't** لا يجب أن

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.

نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ألا نفعله. (الزام بعدم فعل شيء ليس لديك اختيار)

Form: التكوين

Subject + **must not (mustn't)** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex: You **mustn't drink** cold water when you have a sore throat.

- He **mustn't skip** his check-up at the clinic.
- Patients **mustn't stop** the medicine without asking the doctor.

Checkup Exercise (✓)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I _____ to drink warm liquids if my sore throat feels better.
a have **b** don't have **c** must **d** mustn't
- You _____ eat healthy food to stay strong.
a mustn't **b** don't have **c** must **d** have
- Shahenda _____ lift heavy things if she has a back pain.
a doesn't have **b** don't have **c** mustn't **d** not
- My brother _____ to go to the clinic for a check-up.
a must **b** has **c** have **d** mustn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- He _____ (**must**) eat junk food before his medical check-up.
- You _____ (**must**) to rest if you feel very tired.
- Salma _____ (**have**) wear glasses to protect her eyes.
- I _____ (**not**) to see the doctor today; I feel better.
- They must _____ (**took**) their medicine after breakfast.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. At our school, there's a big kit in the nurse's room. SB
 a playground b waiting room c first aid d accident
2. Students must tell a teacher or the when someone is injured. SB
 a driver b cleaner c cook d nurse
3. Teachers have to make sure the kit is always clean, and full. SB
 a ready b untidy c empty d dangerous
4. The first aid kit helps everyone stay at school. SB
 a hungry b safe c dangerous d late
5. We must all remember to be and play safely so we don't get hurt. SB
 a sleepy b noisy c careless d careful
6. "....." means the place where students go when they feel sick at school. SB
 a Pharmacy b Waiting room c Nurse's room d Playground
7. "....." means the person who gives you medicine at school. SB
 a Teacher b Student c Nurse d Cleaner
8. The word "....." shows that you are hurt or sick. SB
 a energetic b dangerous c injured d creative
9. Students tell a teacher or the nurse if someone is injured. SB
 a mustn't b don't have to c have to d has to
10. A patient see the doctor when he is sick. SB
 a have to b must c mustn't d don't have to
11. Nurses make sure the first aid kit is always ready and full. SB
 a has to b have to
 c doesn't have to d don't have to
12. We to worry about small cuts because the nurse knows how to help us. SB
 a mustn't b don't have c have d must

Unit 2 At the Doctor's

13. Students wash their hands before lunch. SB
a has to **b** have to **c** mustn't **d** don't have
14. Children eat too much candy when they are sick. SB
a must **b** have **c** mustn't **d** don't have
15. You to drink plenty of water every day to stay healthy. SB
a must **b** have **c** has **d** don't have
16. We cover our mouth when we cough. SB
a have **b** don't have **c** must **d** mustn't

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

safely - first aid - bandages - accidents - permission

We have important rules at school. We must be careful when we play to avoid ① We must make sure we play ② We mustn't open the first aid kit without ③ It is locked for safety. Following these rules helps everyone. We should learn ④ too.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. If you feel fine today, you (**not**) to go to the doctor. SB
2. You (**must**) stay up late when you're sick. SB
3. She (**have**) to take medicine three times a day. SB
4. They (**must**) to be careful when they cross the busy street.
5. You (**not**) touch a hot stove; it's very dangerous.
6. You (**not**) to buy a new plaster; we have some at home.
7. Everyone must (**listening**) to the teacher's safety instructions.
8. They mustn't (**played**) near the street; it's not safe.
9. You (**mustn't**) tell an adult immediately if you see someone get hurt.
10. She (**not/ have to**) take the syrup if her cough is better.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. aid kit - first - nurse's - in - a big - room - There's - the.

2. and - bandages, - cuts - plasters - for - There - are.

3. permission - the - open - first - We - mustn't - aid kit - without.

4. students - The nurse - to - always - the - help - knows how.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. noha said we mustn't run in the hospital

2. where is the big first aid kit at school

6 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

The importance of the nurse's room

get hurt - first aid kit - stay safe

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



treatment	علاج	examination room	غرفة الفحص / غرفة المعاينة
hope	أمل	tests	اختبارات / فحوصات
donation	تبرع	heal (v)	يشفي / يلتئم الجرح
care	رعاية / عناية	donate (v)	يتبرع
receptionist	موظف الاستقبال	check in	يسجل الوصول



Other words

كلمات أخرى

famous= known	مشهور / معروف	curable	قابل للشفاء / قابل للعلاج
playroom	غرفة اللعب	washable	قابل للغسل
studies	دراسات	enjoyable	ممتع
friendly	ودود / لطيف	breakable	قابل للكسر
plan	خطة	accessible	يمكن الوصول إليه / متاح
adult	شخص بالغ	visible	مرئي / ظاهر
hopeful	مفعم بالأمل / متفائل	terrible	فظيع / رهيب
comfortable	مريح	possible	ممکن / محتمل
readable	قابل للقراءة		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

for free	مجاناً / بالمجان	get the care	يحصل على الرعاية
at low cost	بتكلفة منخفضة	give hope	يعطي الأمل
around the world	حول العالم	'be' located	يقع / يتواجد
give treatment	يقدم العلاج	arrive at	يصل إلى
full of	ممتلئ بـ	get treatment	يحصل على العلاج



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

explain / يوضح / يشرح
continue / يواصل / يستمر

Past ماض

explained
continued

Present مضارع

pay يدفع
take يأخذ

Past ماض

paid
took

Definitions تعريفات

receptionist	موظف استقبال	the person who helps at the desk	الشخص الذي يساعد عند مكتب الاستقبال
--------------	--------------	----------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

not only but also ليس فقط... بل وأيضاً...

Ex: Hospital 57-3-57 is known **not only** in Egypt **but also** around the world.

Study the following

- Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt.
مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ هي مستشفى مشهورة للأطفال في القاهرة، مصر.
- Hospital 57-3-57 is known **not only** in Egypt **but also** around the world.
مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ معروفة ليس فقط في مصر بل وأيضاً حول العالم.
- The hospital helps children who are sick.
تساعد المستشفى الأطفال المرضى.
- The most important thing is that all treatment is free for the children.
الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو أن جميع العلاجات مجانية للأطفال.
- Many people in Egypt donate money to the hospital.
يتبرع العديد من الناس في مصر بالمال للمستشفى.
- These donations help children get the care they need and give their families hope.
تساعد هذه التبرعات الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل.
- When children arrive, a friendly receptionist helps them check in.
عندما يصل الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف استقبال ودود على تسجيل الوصول.
- The nurse takes them to the examination room for tests.
تأخذهم الممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص لإجراء الفحوصات.
- The doctor explains the treatment plan.
يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج.
- The hospital has playrooms, libraries, and other fun places.
تحتوي المستشفى على غرف لعب، ومكتبات، وأماكن ترفيهية أخرى.
- Teachers help children continue their studies while they are getting better.
يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على مواصلة دراستهم بينما هم في طريقهم للتحسن.
- Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope.
مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ مليئة بالأمل.
- Donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.
تساعد التبرعات والعمل الجماعي كل طفل على أن يصبح قوياً وصحياً مرة أخرى.

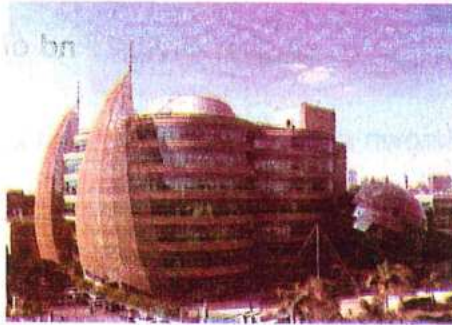
Read the text

أقرأ القصة:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:


Hospital 57-3-57: A Place of Hope مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧: مكان للأمل

Hospital 57-3-57 is a **famous**⁽¹⁾ children's hospital in Cairo, Egypt. It is **known**⁽²⁾ not only in Egypt but also around the world. The hospital is very big and helps children who are sick. The most important thing is that all **treatment**⁽³⁾ is **free**⁽⁴⁾ for the children. Families do not have to **pay**⁽⁵⁾ because many people in Egypt **donate**⁽⁶⁾ money to the hospital. These **donations**⁽⁷⁾ help children get the care they need and give their families hope.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مشهور
- ٢- معروف
- ٣- علاج
- ٤- مجاني
- ٥- يدفع
- ٦- يتبرع
- ٧- تبرعات
- ٨- موظف استقبال ودود
- ٩- يسجل الدخول
- ١٠- غرفة الفحص
- ١١- فحوصات
- ١٢- خطة العلاج
- ١٣- غرف لعب
- ١٤- دراسات

مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ في مستشفى مشهورة للأطفال في القاهرة، مصر. انها معروفة ليس فقط في مصر بل وايضا حول العالم. المستشفى كبيرة جدا وتساعد الأطفال المرضى. الشيء الأكثر أهمية هو أن جميع العلاجات مجانية للأطفال. لا تضطر العائلات إلى الدفع لأن العديد من الناس في مصر يتبرعون بالمال للمستشفى. تساعد هذه التبرعات الأطفال في الحصول على الرعاية التي يحتاجونها وتمنح عائلاتهم الأمل.

When children arrive, a **friendly receptionist**⁽⁸⁾ helps them **check in**⁽⁹⁾. Then a nurse takes them to the **examination room**⁽¹⁰⁾ for **tests**⁽¹¹⁾. After the tests, the doctor explains the **treatment plan**⁽¹²⁾. The hospital also has **playrooms**⁽¹³⁾, libraries, and other fun places so children can feel happy and safe. Teachers help children continue their **studies**⁽¹⁴⁾ while they are getting better.

عندما يصل الأطفال، يساعدهم موظف استقبال ودود على تسجيل الوصول. ثم تأخذهم ممرضة إلى غرفة الفحص لإجراء الاختبارات. بعد الاختبارات، يشرح الطبيب خطة العلاج. تحتوي المستشفى أيضا على غرف لعب، ومكتبات، وأماكن ترفيهية أخرى حتى يشعر الأطفال بالسعادة والأمان. يساعد المعلمون الأطفال على مواصلة دراستهم بينما هم في طريقهم للتحسن.

Hospital 57-3-57 is full of hope. It shows that donations and teamwork help every child become strong and healthy again.

مستشفى ٥٧٣٥٧ مليئة بالأمل. إنها تظهر أن التبرعات والعمل الجماعي يساعدان كل طفل على أن يصبح قويا وصحيا مرة أخرى.

Word Building skills



(Suffixes -able/ -ible) اللاحقات

The suffix **-able / -ible** is added to the end of a word to form an adjective

-able

⇒ **comfortable** مريح → **curable** قابل للعلاج → **readable** قابل للقراءة
washable قابل للغسل → **enjoyable** ممتع

-ible

⇒ **accessible** مرئي/ظاهر يمكن الوصول إليه → **visible** مرئي/ظاهر
 → **terrible** فظيع/رهيب → **possible** ممكن/محتمل

لاحظ: عند النطق يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول وليس على اللاحقة

Ex: COM-fort-able, CURE-able

Look at the pictures below. Complete the words using -able or -ible

انظر الى الصور بالاسفل. اكمل الكلمات باستخدام اللاحقات:



1

comfort



2

cur



3

read



4

wash



5

access

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Hospital 57-3-57 is only known in Egypt.	☐	☐
2. The hospital helps every child heal and become weaker.	☐	☐
3. The doctors and nurses work hard.	☐	☐
4. Getting better is impossible in Hospital 57-3-57.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A _____ is a person who helps children check in when they arrive at the hospital. SB
 a nurse b doctor c receptionist d teacher
- The word "_____ " means to give money to help the hospital. SB
 a heal b care c hope d donate
- The nurse takes the children to the _____ for tests. SB
 a waiting room b examination room c playroom d library
- Teachers help children continue their _____ while they are getting better. SB
 a donations b studies c treatment d care
- My new phone is not _____. It's super strong. SB
 a enjoyable b comfortable c curable d breakable
- The teacher's handwriting is _____. SB
 a readable b washable c enjoyable d curable
- It's _____ to finish your homework before dinner if you start now. SB
 a visible b possible c terrible d accessible
- I didn't like the movie, it was _____. SB
 a accessible b enjoyable c terrible d readable

9. It takes time to _____ after a serious accident.

a heal

b pay

c donate

d hope

10. The doctor explained the new _____ plan to the patient.

a waiting

b tests

c treatment

d hope

11. The government hospital provides treatment _____ low cost.

a at

b from

c with

d in

12. Hospital 57-3-57 provides all medical treatment _____ free to sick children.

a in

b off

c for

d with

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

care - donations - studies - hope- treatment

Al-Orman Charitable Hospital in Cairo is a special place. It provides ① _____ for patients for free. It depends completely on ② _____ from kind people. When a patient arrives, a friendly team helps them. They can get the ③ _____ they need without worry. This hospital gives ④ _____ to thousands every year.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. donate - the hospital - to - Many - money - people.

2. free - children - treatment - All - for - the - is.

3. helps - sick - who - The - are - children - hospital.

4. the care - donations - get - The - children - help.

5. plan - The - treatment - doctor - explains - the.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the nurse helps the sick children

2. can you donate money to the hospital

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

sick leave
requestإجازة مرضية
طلب

healthy tip

نصيحة صحية



Other words

كلمات أخرى

business email
understandingبريد إلكتروني رسمي
تفهم

best regards

bookmark

أطيب التحيات
فاصل كتاب / علامة مرجعية

Healthy Tips نصائح صحية

1- Wash your hands

اغسل يديك

3- Get enough sleep

احصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم

2- Eat healthy food

كل طعامًا صحيًا

4- Exercise every day

مارس الرياضة كل يوم



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

go to work / school
"be" able toيذهب إلى العمل / المدرسة
يكون قادرًا علىaway from
Thank ... forبعيداً عن
يشكر ... على

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

receive يتلقى / يستلم
return يعود / يرجع

Past ماضٍ

received
returned

Present مضارع

send يرسل
let يدع / يسمح

Past ماضٍ

sent
let

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 let + someone + inf يدع / يسمح

Ex: I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today.

2 will / won't be able to + inf سيكون قادراً على / لن يكون قادراً على

Ex: I will not be able to come to work for two days.

3 for + مدة زمنية

Ex: I will not be able to come to work for two days.

4 on + specific days/ dates

أيام محددة / تاريخ كامل

Ex: I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

Study the following

1 I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today.

اكتب إليك لأخبرك بأنني لست بخير اليوم.

2 I will not be able to come to work for two days.

لن أتمكن من المجيء إلى العمل لمدة يومين.

3 I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

أمل أن أشعر بالتحسن وأعود يوم الأربعاء، الخامس عشر من أكتوبر.

How to write a formal email



كيفية كتابة بريد إلكتروني (إيميل) رسمي

1 What is a formal email?

• A formal email is a polite and respectful email that you write to someone important, like a teacher, a principal, or someone you don't know well.

البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي هو بريد إلكتروني مهذب ومحترم تكتبه لشخص مهم، مثل معلم، أو مدير مدرسة، أو شخص لا تعرفه جيداً.

2 How we write it:

كيف نكتبه

From:	اسم المرسل إليه و اسم المرسل إليه و الموضوع
To:	اسم المرسل إليه
Subject:	الموضوع (عنوان يخبر عن محتوى الإيميل):
Dear + اسم المرسل إليه ,	2- التحيّة Greeting:
Reason for writing and short explanation	3- سبب كتابة الإيميل مع شرح بسيط
I am writing to + السبب الأساسي	4- عليك إضافة جملتين للتوضيح بشكل أفضل
A polite closing sentence	5- جملة ختامية مهذبة (شكر الشخص بشكل مهذب)
Thank you for your time and help.	
Thank you for your understanding.	
Best regards, أطيّب التحيات	6- خاتمة رسمية A formal closing
اسم المرسل	

3 Example:

You have a fever and you want to send a sick leave request to your school. Write an email of about (30-40) words to your teacher. Your name is Mohamed and your teacher's name is Khaled.

من: اسم المراسل إلى: اسم المرسل إليه الموضوع: عنوان محتوى الإيميل	From : Mohamed To : Mr. Khaled Subject : Sick Leave Today
التحية Greeting	Dear Mr. Khaled,
Reason for writing and short explanation سبب كتابة الإيميل مع شرح بسيط	I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a cough and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.
Explain how long the leave will be and when you'll come back. اشرح كم ستكون مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود	I will not be able to come to school today. I hope to feel better and return tomorrow.
A polite closing sentence جملة ختامية مهذبة	Thank you for your understanding.
A formal closing خاتمة رسمية اسم المراسل	Best regards, Mohamed

Read the following email:

البريد الإلكتروني (الإيميل) التالي:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



A Sick Day: Business Email طلب إجازة مرضية، بريد إلكتروني رسمي

From : Karim

من: كريم

→ The person who is sending the email

الشخص المرسل للبريد الإلكتروني

To : Ramy

إلى: رامي

→ The person who is receiving the email

الشخص المستلم للبريد الإلكتروني

Subject : Sick Leave for Two Days

الموضوع: إجازة مرضية لمدة يومين

→ The subject line tells what the email is about.

سطر الموضوع يخبر عن محتوى البريد الإلكتروني

Dear Mr. Ramy,

عزيزي الأستاذ رامي

→ **Greeting** : we start with "Dear" + the person's name.

التحية: نبدأ بعزيزي + اسم الشخص

I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a fever and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home.

اكتب إليك لأخبرك بأنني لا أشعر أنني بخير اليوم. لدي حمى والتهاب في الحلق، لذا أحتاج للراحة في المنزل.

→ **Reason for writing and short explanation**

سبب الكتابة وشرح موجز

I will not be able to come to work for two days. I hope to feel better and return on Wednesday, October 15th.

لن أتمكن من المجيء إلى العمل لمدة يومين. أأمل أن أشعر بتحسن وأن أعود يوم الأربعاء، ١٥ أكتوبر

→ **Explain how long the leave will be and when you'll come back.**

اشرح كم ستكون مدة الإجازة ومتى ستعود.

Thank you for your understanding.

شكرا لتفهمك

→ **A polite closing sentence**

جملة ختامية مهذبة.

Best regards,

مع أطيب التحيات،

→ **A formal closing**

خاتمة رسمية.

Karim Hassan

→ Your full name at the end

اسمك الكامل في النهاية.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I need to send a sick leave to my teacher.
 a request b tip c bookmark d regards
2. Did you my email yesterday?
 a return b thank c receive d let
3. It is good to every day by playing outside.
 a request b send c sleep d exercise
4. My father sent a to his manager to ask for sick leave.
 a healthy tip b bookmark
 c business email d stickers
5. I thank you your help with my homework.
 a for b from c on d at
6. He will be from the office this week.
 a way b away c ways d a way
7. She ended her email with ".....".
 a Dear, b Best regards, c Hello d Sorry
8. Children need to enough sleep to feel good.
 a do b make c get d send

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

healthy - strong - request - weak - rest

We created a bookmark with a healthy tip to help everyone stay healthy. You must wash your hands and eat ① food like fruits. Also, get enough sleep (8-10 hours) so your body and brain can ② If you follow these tips, you will be able to be strong and avoid a sick leave ③ Exercise every day to keep your body ④

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. plenty of - help - Drink - to - grow - water - strong - your body.

2. to - better - hope - feel - return - tomorrow - I - and.

3. won't - be - come - work - able to - to - I.

4. today - not - Tayem - feeling - well - is.

4 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Healthy Tips

healthy food - enough sleep - exercise

Review



on Unit 2

Key vocabulary



sore throat

التهاب الحلق



headache

صداع



fever

حمى



cough

كحة (سعال)



stomachache

ألم في المعدة

clinic	عيادة	care	رعاية / عناية
check-up	فحص طبي	receptionist	موظف الاستقبال
examination room	غرفة الفحص	tests	اختبارات / فحوصات
serious	خطير	heal (v)	يشفى / يلتئم الجرح
pharmacy	صيدلية	donate (v)	يتبرع
medicine	دواء	check in	يسجل الوصول
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	sick leave	إجازة مرضية
treatment	علاج	request	طلب
hope	أمل	healthy tip	نصيحة صحية
donation	تبرع		

Language in Use

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

A Affirmative يضطر أن has to/ have to

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (has to/ have to) when it's necessary to do something.

• نستخدم (has to/ have to) عندما يكون من الضروري فعل أمر ما

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **have to + inf.** فعل في المصدر.He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **has to + inf.** فعل في المصدر.Ex: I **have to** see the doctor because I have a fever

B Negative غير مضطر أن don't have to/ doesn't have to

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (doesn't/don't have to) to talk about things that are not necessary.

• نستخدم (doesn't/don't have to) عندما يكون فعل شيء غير ضروري (لا يوجد إلزام فلديك حرية الاختيار).

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **don't have to + inf.** فعل في المصدر.He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **doesn't have to + inf.** فعل في المصدر.Ex: You **don't have to** stay in bed if you only have a small headache.

Must

A Affirmative يجب أن must

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation.

• نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة (ما يجب علينا فعله) (عادة ما تكون إلزام) قاعدة مهمة (نصيحة قوية).

Form: التكوين

Subject + **must + inf.** مصدر الفعلEx: We **must** wash our hands before eating food.

B Negative لا يجب أن mustn't

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.

• نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ألا نفعله. (إلزام بعدم فعل شيء ليس لديك اختيار)



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Some advice to stay healthy

To stay healthy, take care of your body. If you feel sick, like having a fever or headache, go to the clinic for a check-up. Follow the doctor's advice, take your medicine from the pharmacy, and rest. Take care of yourself to feel well.

2

Lesson 2

The importance of the nurse's room

The nurse's room is very important. It is a safe place where students can go when they feel sick or get hurt. Inside, there is a first aid kit with bandages, plasters, and medicine for cuts and bruises. The nurse knows how to help students right away. This helps everyone stay safe at school.

3

Lessons 4&5

Healthy Tips

To stay healthy, wash your hands. Eat healthy food like fruits and vegetables. Drink plenty of water. Get enough sleep every night for 8-10 hours. Finally, exercise every day by playing outside. These healthy tips help your body grow strong and feel good.

4

Test Al-Azhar

Requesting sick leave

New Message

To : Mr. Murad Cc Bcc

From : Nada

Subject : Sick Leave Today

Dear Mr. Murad,

I am writing to let you know that I am not feeling well today. I have a cough and a sore throat, so I need to rest at home. I will not be able to come to school today. I hope to feel better and return tomorrow.

Thank you for your understanding.

Best regards,

Nada

Send  

5

Test on Unit 2

Hospital 57-3-57

Hospital 57-3-57 is a famous children's hospital that is full of hope. All treatment is free for children. Donations from many people help children get the care they need to heal. This teamwork helps every child become strong and healthy again.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- The treatment at The City Hospital is at cost.
☐ a free ☐ b low ☐ c high ☐ d zero
- A/ An receptionist helps patients when they arrive.
☐ a angry ☐ b friendly ☐ c helpful ☐ d hopeful
- The hospital gives people and good care.
☐ a money ☐ b help ☐ c hope ☐ d medicine

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل:

worry- nurse's room - plaster - bruise

Teacher : Hello, what's wrong? You don't look well.

Student : I fell during the break, and I have a ① on my knee.

Teacher : You must go to the ② right away.

Student : Do I have to ③ about it?

Teacher : No, it's not serious. The nurse must clean it and put a ④ on it.

Student : Thank you for the care!

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The seat is so soft and
☐ a readable ☐ b terrible ☐ c comfortable ☐ d curable
- A is a place in the hospital where people sit until they see the doctor.
☐ a waiting room ☐ b examination room
☐ c playroom ☐ d living room
- Students eat healthy food.
☐ a must ☐ b mustn't ☐ c have ☐ d don't have to
- They to buy tickets; the concert is free.
☐ a don't have ☐ b doesn't have ☐ c mustn't ☐ d doesn't

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. We must to be quiet in the library. (.....)
2. You must run near the swimming pool. (.....)
3. Nelly is better today, so she not have to stay in bed all day. (.....)
4. A pilot have to check the plane before takeoff. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar did not feel well. He had a headache and a cough. He saw a bottle of medicine in the kitchen. Without asking, he drank some. It was the wrong medicine! Soon, his stomach hurt badly and he felt worse. His father saw him look weak and asked, "What's wrong?" Omar told him. His father said, "You mustn't take medicine without permission!" They went to the clinic right away. The doctor checked Omar and gave the right advice. Omar learned to always ask an adult before taking any medicine..

A) Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Omar had a fever and a sore throat.	☐	☐
2. Omar's father took him to the clinic after he took the wrong medicine.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. Omar saw in the kitchen.

a food
b milk

c a bottle of medicine
d a book
4. Omar looked after taking the medicine.

a happy
b better
c weak
d strong
5. We should ask before taking any medicine.

a a friend
b a baby
c an adult
d a little brother

6 Write a formal email of 4 sentences to your teacher requesting sick leave:

اكتب ايميل من (4) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

cough – rest – feel better – able to

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Youssef fell while riding his bicycle.	☐	☐
2. Youssef's friend took him to the nurse's room.	☐	☐
3. The nurse cleaned the cut and put a bandage on it.	☐	☐
4. Now, Youssef plays more safely.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The word "-----" means a place where doctors help sick people feel better. SB

a pharmacy **b** clinic **c** waiting room **d** playroom

2. You can buy your ----- from the pharmacy after you visit the doctor. SB

a ticket **b** medicine **c** tools **d** outfits

3. I ----- get up early tomorrow; it's a holiday.

a have to **b** has to **c** must **d** don't have to

4. We ----- listen carefully to the safety instructions.

a must **b** have **c** mustn't **d** don't have to

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

serious - checkup - pain - rest - hurt

My friend had an accident. He fell and his leg ① ----- badly. He had a broken leg. He went to the clinic. The doctor said it was ② ----- . He must ③ ----- for many weeks. He feels a lot of ④ ----- . We will visit him and help him. I hope he feels better soon.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: SB

The doctor's best advice for staying healthy is to follow good **rules** every day. First, eat healthy food like fruits and vegetables to make your body strong. Next, drink plenty of water and get plenty of sleep each night. You must also exercise and play safely to avoid accidents. Remember to wash your hands often to avoid getting sick. If you ever feel tired or feel sick, you must rest and take care of yourself. Finally, go for a regular check-up at the clinic even when you feel well. This advice helps you stay safe and full of energy.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The passage is mainly about

- ☐ a a list of different foods to eat.
☐ b important daily rules for good health.
☐ c how to find the nearest clinic.
☐ d the best time to sleep at night.

2. The word "**rules**" is similar in meaning to

- ☐ a tips ☐ b games ☐ c accidents ☐ d exercises

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What should you do every day to make your body strong?

.....

4. What should you do if you feel tired or sick?

.....

5. Why is it important to go for a check-up even when you feel well?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (**must**) use the first aid kit without your mother's permission. SB

2. The baby (**have to**) drink milk every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. sister - a headache - My - a cough - has - and.

2. days - away - work - Murad - will - from - be - three - for.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. how are you feeling today

2. i didn't like the movie

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن :

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Hospital 57-3-57

famous - treatment - get the care



Suitcase Stories حكايات الحقيرة

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- use target vocabulary to discuss travel preparations and destinations.
يستخدم الطلاب مفردات مستهدفة لمناقشة الاستعدادات ووجهات السفر.
- express future plans and intentions using "going to" in affirmative, negative, and question forms.
يعبر الطلاب عن الخطط والنوايا المستقبلية باستخدام صيغة "going to" في أشكالها المثبتة، والمثنية، وصيغ الأسئلة.
- talk about future travel plans in a role play format.
يتحدث الطلاب عن خطط السفر المستقبلية في شكل لعب أدوار (تمثيل).

Listening:

- identify the gist in short dialogs about travel plans.
يحدد الطلاب الفكرة العامة في حوارات قصيرة حول خطط السفر.
- identify specific details in short dialogs about travel plans.
يحدد الطلاب التفاصيل المحددة في حوارات قصيرة حول خطط السفر.
- recognize the meaning of travel related unknown vocabulary in spoken texts.
يتعرف الطلاب على معنى المفردات غير المعروفة المتعلقة بالسفر في النصوص المسموعة.

Reading:

- identify the main idea in short text about Egypt and camping.
يحدد الطلاب الفكرة الرئيسية في نصوص قصيرة عن مصر وإقامة المعسكرات.
- identify key details in texts about travel experiences.
يحدد الطلاب التفاصيل الأساسية في نصوص حول تجارب السفر.
- recognize the meaning of unknown words using clues.
يتعرف الطلاب على معنى الكلمات غير المعروفة باستخدام أدلة.

Writing:

- write about future plans using "going to".
يكتب الطلاب عن الخطط المستقبلية باستخدام صيغة "going to" (سوف).
- write an informal email invitation to a friend.
يكتب الطلاب رسالة بريد إلكتروني غير رسمية (دعوة) إلى صديق.
- design a Travel adventure book.
يصمم الطلاب كتاباً عن مغامرات السفر.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



suitcase

حقيرة سفر



pack

يحزم / يعبئ (الأمعة)



travel

يسافر



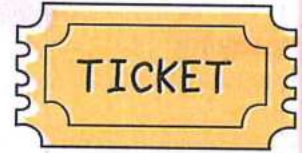
crowded

مزدحم



beach

شاطئ



ticket

تذكرة

trip

رحلة

vacation

إجازة / عطلة

Bibliotheca Alexandrina

مكتبة الإسكندرية

Qaitbay Citadel

قلعة قايتباي



Other words

كلمات أخرى

summer

صيف

toothbrush

فرشاة أسنان

sandy

رملي / مليء بالرمال

sunscreen

واقى شمس

clothes

ملابس

empty

فارغ

excited

متحمس / سعيد جداً

cheap

رخيص

swimming suit

بدلة سباحة (مايوه)

country

بلد / دولة

except

باستثناء

families

عائلات

glad

سعيد / مسرور

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

pack suitcase	يحزم حقيبة السفر	build sandcastles	يبنى قلاعاً رملية
pack for a trip	يحزم الامتعة من أجل رحلة	by the beach	بجانب الشاطئ
get a service	يحصل على خدمة	double-check	يتأكد مرتين / يتحقق مرة أخرى
put in	يضع	at the bus station	في محطة الحافلات
decide to	يقرر أن	feel about	يشعر تجاه
by the way	بالمناسبة / على أي حال	Great idea!	فكرة عظيمة!
of course	بالطبع / طبعاً		

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

prove	يثبت
enter	يدخل
believe	يصدق / يؤمن
pass	يمر (الوقت)
remind	يذكر

Past ماضٍ

proved
entered
believed
passed
reminded

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

forget	ينسى
build	يبنى

Past ماضٍ

forgot
built

Definitions

تعريفات

suitcase	حقيبة سفر	a large bag for clothes when traveling	حقيبة كبيرة للملابس عند السفر
pack (v.)	يحزم / يعبئ	to put things in a bag before a trip	يضع الأشياء في حقيبة قبل الرحلة
travel	يسافر	to go to another place	يذهب إلى مكان آخر
crowded	مزدحم	full of many people	مليء بالناس
beach	شاطئ	a sandy place near the sea	مكان رملي قرب البحر
ticket	تذكرة	something that proves you can enter a place or get a service	شيء يثبت أنك تستطيع دخول مكان أو الحصول على خدمة

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 decide to + inf فعل في المصدر

يقرر أن

Ex: Our families **decided to** go to Alexandria together.

2 I can't wait to + inf فعل في المصدر

لا أستطيع الانتظار

Ex: I **can't wait to** swim and build sand castles by the beach!

Study the following

1 I'm so glad our families **decided to go to Alexandria together!**

أنا سعيدة جداً لأن عائلاتنا قررت الذهاب إلى الإسكندرية معاً.

2 A whole week by the beach with our best friends is **going to be amazing.**

أسبوع كامل بجانب الشاطئ مع أصدقائنا المقربين سيكون مذهلاً.

3 I'm **going to pack my suitcase tonight.**

سأقوم بتعبئة حقيبة سفري الليلة.

4 I put in everything except my toothbrush.

لقد وضعت كل شيء باستثناء فرشاة أسناني.

5 My mother told me the bus is **going to be very crowded.**

قالت لي أمي إن الحافلة ستكون مزدحمة جداً.

6 It's the summer vacation and many families are **traveling.**

إنها الإجازة الصيفية والكثير من العائلات تسافر.

7 We can sing songs together to **make the time pass quickly!**

يمكننا أن نغني أغاني معاً لنجعل الوقت يمر بسرعة!

8 I **can't wait to swim and build sandcastles by the beach!**

لا أستطيع الانتظار للسباحة وبناء القلاع الرملية بجانب الشاطئ!

9 The beach in Alexandria is **so beautiful.**

شاطئ الإسكندرية جميل جداً.

10 I'm **going to double-check my suitcase before I go to sleep.**

سأتحقق من حقيبة سفري مرة أخرى قبل أن أذهب للنوم.

11 I **should go home now and start packing my suitcase.**

يجب أن أذهب إلى المنزل الآن وأبدأ بتعبئة حقيبة سفري.

12 I'll **see you tomorrow at the bus station!**

أراك غداً في محطة الاتوبيس!

Listen and read

استمع وأقرأ:

استمع إلى النص:



Tape Script



Last-Minute Packing تجهيز الحقائب في آخر لحظة



Sara : Hey Sohaila! I can't believe our summer trip is finally here. I'm so **glad**⁽¹⁾ our families decided to go to Alexandria together!

سارة: مرحباً سهيلة! لا أستطيع أن أصدق أن رحلتنا الصيفية قد حانت أخيراً. أنا سعيدة جداً لأن عائلاتنا قررت الذهاب إلى الإسكندرية معاً!

Sohaila : Me too! A whole week by the beach with our best friends is going to be **amazing**⁽²⁾.

سهيلة: أنا أيضاً أسبوع كامل بجانب الشاطئ مع أصدقائنا المقربين سيكون مذهلاً.

Sara : Sohaila, I'm so **excited**⁽³⁾ - we're finally going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow!

سارة: سهيلة، أنا متحمسة جداً - سنسافر أخيراً إلى الإسكندرية غداً!

Sohaila : I'm so excited too! Did you **pack your suitcase**⁽⁴⁾?

سهيلة: أنا متحمسة أيضاً! هل جهزت حقيبة سفرك؟

Sara : Not yet. I'm going to pack tonight. I need to put in my summer clothes, my **swimming suit**⁽⁵⁾, and my camera. What about you?

سارة: ليس بعد. سأجهزها الليلة. أحتاج أن أضع ملابس الصيف، وبدلة السباحة، والكاميرا. ماذا عنك؟

Sohaila : I already packed my suitcase yesterday! I put in everything **except**⁽⁶⁾ my toothbrush. By the way, do you have our bus tickets?

سهيلة: لقد جهزت حقيبة سفري بالفعل بالأمس! وضعت كل شيء باستثناء فرشاة أسناني. بالمناسبة، هل لديك تذاكر الحافلة الخاصة بنا؟

Arabic Meaning

- ١- مسرور
- ٢- مدهل
- ٣- متحمس
- ٤- يعبئ حقائب السفر
- ٥- بدلة السباحة
- ٦- ما عدا

Sara : Yes, my mother has all the tickets. She told me the bus is going to be very crowded because it's the **summer vacation**⁽⁷⁾ and many families are traveling.

سارة: نعم، والدتي لديها جميع التذاكر. أخبرتني أن الحافلة ستكون مزدحمة جداً لأنها الإجازة الصيفية والكثير من العائلات تسافر.

Sohaila : That's okay. We can sing songs together to make the time **pass**⁽⁸⁾ quickly!

سهيلة: لا بأس بذلك. يمكننا أن نغني أغاني معاً لنجعل الوقت يمر بسرعة!

Sara : Great idea! What are you most excited to see in Alexandria?

سارة: فكرة عظيمة! ما هو أكثر شيء متحمسة لرؤيته في الإسكندرية؟

Sohaila : I really want to see **Qaitbay Citadel**⁽⁹⁾ and the new library, **Bibliotheca Alexandrina**⁽¹⁰⁾. And of course, I can't wait to swim and build **sandcastles**⁽¹¹⁾ by the beach!

سهيلة: أريد حقاً أن أرى قلعة قايتباي والمكتبة الجديدة، مكتبة الإسكندرية. وبالطبع، لا أستطيع الانتظار

للسباحة وبناء القلاع الرملية بجانب الشاطئ!

Sara : Me too! The beach in Alexandria is so beautiful. Don't forget to put **sunscreen**⁽¹²⁾ in your suitcase when you finish packing.

سارة: أنا أيضاً! شاطئ الإسكندرية جميل جداً. لا تنسى أن تضعي الواقي الشمسي في حقبتك عندما تنتهين من التوضيب.

Sohaila : won't! I'm going to double-check my suitcase before I go to sleep to make sure I didn't **forget**⁽¹³⁾ anything.

سهيلة: لن أنسى! سأتحقق من حقيبة سفري مرة أخرى قبل أن أذهب للنوم لأتأكد من أنني لم أنس أي شيء.

Sara : Me too. Well, I should go home now and start packing my suitcase. I'll see you tomorrow at the **bus station**⁽¹⁴⁾!

سارة: أنا أيضاً. حسناً، يجب أن أذهب إلى المنزل الآن وأبدأ بتعبئة حقيبة سفري. أراك غداً في محطة الاتوبيس!

Sohaila : see you!

سهيلة: أراك!

Arabic Meaning

- ٧- إجازة الصيف
- ٨- يمر
- ٩- قلعة قايتباي
- ١٠- مكتبة الاسكندرية
- ١١- قلاع من الرمال
- ١٢- كريم واقي من الشمس
- ١٣- ينسى
- ١٤- محطة الاتوبيس

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. "_____ " is a large bag for clothes when traveling. SB
 a Vacation b Trip c Suitcase d Summer
2. "_____ " means full of many people. SB
 a Cheap b Crowded c Excited d Empty
3. To _____ is to put things in a bag before a trip. SB
 a visit b travel c pass d pack
4. A _____ is something that proves you can enter a place or get a service. SB
 a sunscreen b ticket c toothbrush d swimming suit
5. To _____ is to go to another place. SB
 a believe b remind c eat d travel
6. "_____ " means a sandy place near the sea. SB
 a Summer b Beach c Sunscreen d Swimming suit
7. We are planning a _____ to Luxor next month.
 a beach b trip c station d service
8. By the beach, you can see many families _____ sandcastles.
 a get b eat c build d run
9. The dentist said to change your _____ every three months.
 a sunscreen b toothbrush
 c swimming suit d clothes
10. He _____ his suitcase to see if he packed his swimming suit.
 a proved b forgot
 c double-checked d traveled

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pack - crowded - check - tickets - beach

SB

Sara and Sohaila are going to travel to Alexandria tomorrow. Sara is going to
 ① _____ her suitcase tonight with summer clothes and her swimming suit.
 Sara's mother has their bus ② _____. The bus will be ③ _____ because
 it's the summer holiday. They will also visit the ④ _____ and swim there.

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

أقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Leila was glad it was Friday. Her father had a surprise. "We are going on a trip!" he said. "Pack your suitcase; we leave in two hours." Leila was so excited! She ran to her room. What should she put in? Summer clothes, her blue swimming suit, and of course her toothbrush. The beach would be sandy and **hot**, so she needed sunscreen. By the way, she should take her camera. She didn't know the country, but she believed it would be fun. This surprise vacation was a great idea!

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The passage is about

☐ a surprise trip

☐ summer clothes

☐ a new country

☐ a new camera

2. The word "**hot**" is opposite to

☐ warm

☐ cheap

☐ cold

☐ empty

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What did Leila pack for the trip?

.....

4. Why do you think Leila needed sunscreen?

.....

5. How did Leila feel about the surprise vacation?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. toothbrush - my - in - everything - I - put - except.

.....

2. I'm - suitcase - going - my - tonight - to - pack.

.....

3. crowded - very - to - going - is - be - The bus.

.....

4. beach - I - to - want - by - sandcastles - build - the .

5. at - tomorrow - the - bus station - I'll - you - see .

6. in - is - The beach - so - Alexandria - beautiful.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What does Sohaila want to see in alexandria

2. mariam packed her suitcase yesterday

6 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A country you want to travel to

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

SB

amazing - pack - camera

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



The Pyramids

الأهرامات



Egyptian Temple

معبد مصري



a boat on the Nile River

قارب في نهر النيل

home country

الوطن الأم / البلد الأصلي

pharaohs

الفرعون

Egyptian

مصري

ancient Egyptian kings

ملوك مصر القدماء

the Great Pyramids of Giza

أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى

Nile cruise

رحلة نيلية

the Sphinx

أبو الهول

open-air museum

متحف مفتوح

tomb

مقبرة

island

جزيرة

Other words

كلمات أخرى

special

خاص / مميز

powerful

قوي

light

خفيف

felucca

فلوكة

outfits

ملابس

wonderful

رائع / مذهش

sunglasses

نظارة شمسية

chance

فرصة

weather

طقس

instead

بدلاً من ذلك

adventure

مغامرة

childhood

طفولة

heritage

تراث

discover

يكشف

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

from all over the world

من جميع أنحاء العالم

south to

جنوباً إلى

move abroad

ينتقل للعيش في الخارج

learn about

يتعلم عن

one-week vacation

إجازة لمدة أسبوع

move back to

يعود للعيش في

get ready with

يستعد بـ / يجهز بـ

ride a traditional boat

يركب قارباً تقليدياً

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

call يسمي
explore يستكشف
stay يقيم

Past ماضٍ

called
explored
stayed

Present مضارع

spend يقضي (وقت)
know يعرف
build يبني

Past ماضٍ

spent
knew
built

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 the most + long adj.

الأكثر (صيغة التفضيل العليا)

Ex: Mr. Maged wants to show his family **the most** beautiful places in their one-week vacation.

Study the following

1 Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their home country, Egypt.

في الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنهم الأم، مصر.

2 Mr. Maged is Egyptian, but he moved abroad many years ago.

السيد ماجد مصري، لكنه انتقل للعيش في الخارج منذ سنوات عديدة.

3 They are getting ready with their suitcases.

إنهم يستعدون بتجهيز حقائب سفرهم.

4 They packed light outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather.

قاموا بتعبئة ملابس خفيفة، وقبعات، ونظارات شمسية للطقس الحار.

5 They are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx.

سيرون أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى وأبو الهول.

6 They are very excited to see tombs of ancient Egyptian kings.

إنهم متحمسون جداً لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء.

7 They are going to take a train south to Luxor.

سيستقلون قطاراً متجهين جنوباً إلى الأقصر.

8 People often call Luxor the "world's greatest open-air museum."

غالباً ما يُطلق الناس على الأقصر اسم "أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم".

Unit 3 Suitcase Stories

9 They are going to explore the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor.

سيستكشفون معابد الكرنك والأقصر المذهلة.

10 They are going to learn about powerful kings like Ramses II.

سيتعرفون على الملوك الأقوياء مثل رمسيس الثاني.

11 They are going to Aswan on a beautiful Nile cruise.

سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية جميلة.

12 They are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful islands.

سيركبون قارباً يسمى "فلوكة" ويرون الجزر الجميلة.

13 They are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria.

سيقضون اليومين الأخيرين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية.

14 They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach.

سيسبحون في البحر ويبنون قلاعاً رملية على شاطئها المشهور.

Read the text

استمع و أقرأ:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



A Special Trip Home رحلة خاصة إلى الوطن

Next week, Mr. Maged and his family are going to travel to their **home country**⁽¹⁾, Egypt! He is **Egyptian**⁽²⁾, but he **moved abroad**⁽³⁾ many years ago. Now, he wants to show his family the most beautiful places in their **one-week vacation**⁽⁴⁾.

في الأسبوع القادم، سيسافر السيد ماجد وعائلته إلى وطنهم الأم، مصر! هو مصري، لكنه انتقل للعيش في الخارج منذ سنوات عديدة. والآن، يريد أن يظهر لعائلته أجمل الأماكن في إجازتهم التي تستغرق أسبوعاً واحداً.

First, they are **getting ready**⁽⁵⁾ with their suitcases, where they packed **light outfits**⁽⁶⁾, hats and **sunglasses**⁽⁷⁾ for the hot weather. Their **adventure**⁽⁸⁾ starts in Cairo. they are going to see the Great Pyramids of Giza and the Sphinx. They are very excited to see **tombs**⁽⁹⁾ of ancient Egyptian kings as their father told them stories about the ancient **pharaohs**⁽¹⁰⁾ who built them.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الوطن الأم
- ٢- مصري
- ٣- ينتقل للعيش بالخارج
- ٤- إجازة لمدة أسبوع
- ٥- يستعدون
- ٦- ملابس خفيفة
- ٧- نظارات
- ٨- مغامرة
- ٩- مقابر
- ١٠- الفراعنة

أولاً، إنهم يستعدون بتجهيز حقائب سفرهم، حيث قاموا بتعبئة ملابس خفيفة، وقبعات، ونظارات

شمسية للحلقة الحار. تبدأ مغامرتهم في القاهرة. سيزورون أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى وأبو الهول. إنهم

متحمسون جداً لرؤية مقابر ملوك مصر القدماء، حيث أخبرهم والدهم قصصاً عن الفراعنة القدامى الذين بنوها.

Then, they are going to take a train **south**⁽¹¹⁾ to Luxor. People often call it the "world's greatest **open-air museum**⁽¹²⁾." There, they are going to **explore**⁽¹³⁾ the amazing **temples**⁽¹⁴⁾ of Karnak and Luxor, and learn about **powerful**⁽¹⁵⁾ kings like Ramses II. They are going to Aswan on a beautiful **Nile cruise**⁽¹⁶⁾. They are going to take a boat called "felucca" and see the beautiful **islands**⁽¹⁷⁾.

بعد ذلك، سيستقلون قطاراً متجهين جنوباً إلى الأقصر. غالباً ما يطلق الناس عليها اسم "أعظم متحف مفتوح في العالم". وهناك، سيستكشفون معابد الكرنك والأقصر المذهلة، ويتعرفون على الملوك الأقوياء مثل رمسيس الثاني. سيذهبون إلى أسوان في رحلة نيلية جميلة. سيأخذون قارباً يسمى "فلوكة" ويرون الجزر الجميلة.

Finally, they are going to spend the last two days of their trip in Alexandria. They are going to swim in the sea and build sandcastles on its famous beach. This trip is a wonderful **chance**⁽¹⁸⁾ for the family to know their country together.

أخيراً، سيقضون اليومين الأخيرين من رحلتهم في الإسكندرية. سيسبحون في البحر ويبنّون قلعة رملية على شاطئها الشهير. هذه الرحلة هي فرصة رائعة للعائلة ليتعرفوا على بلدهم معاً.

Arabic Meaning

- ١١- جنوب
- ١٢- متحف مفتوح
- ١٣- يستكشف
- ١٤- معابد
- ١٥- قوي
- ١٦- رحلة نيلية
- ١٧- جزر
- ١٨- فرصة

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

"Going to" for future plans سوف مع الخطط المستقبلية

1 Usage: الاستخدام

⊙ We use "going to" when we talk about something we plan to do in the future.

⊙ نستخدم "going to" عندما نتحدث عن شيء نخطط للقيام به في المستقبل.

2 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I	+ am	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

Ex: I **am going to** visit the beach.

- Sally **is going to** pack her suitcase.

- They **are going to** stay in a hotel.

3 Negative: النفي

I	+ am	} + not + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

Unit 3 Suitcase Stories

Ex: I **am not going to** forget my passport.

- Omar **is not going to** swim today.
- We **are not going to** stay at home.

4 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Am + I } + going to + inf. ؟ فعل في المصدر
IS + he, she, it, اسم مفرد
Are + we, They, You, اسم جمع

Ex: Am I **going to** take my camera?

- Is she **going to** wear sunglasses?
- Are they **going to** travel to Cairo?

⊙ Wh- question: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh-word كلمة استفهام { am + I
is + he, she, it, اسم مفرد
are + we, they, you, اسم جمع } + going to + inf. ؟ فعل في المصدر

Ex: Where **are you going to** travel next holiday?

- What **is the family going to** do in Alexandria?
- When **am I going to** visit my grandma, mom?

5 Key words : الكلمات الدالة

tomorrow - غدا - next (week/ month/ year) (الأسبوع/ الشهر/ السنة) - soon قريباً

- in the future لاحقاً - later في المستقبل

in a few (minutes - hours - days) (أيام - دقائق - ساعات) - one day في يوم ما

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We visited the beautiful, old _____ to learn about history. SB
 a temple b pool c park d hospital
2. Mr. Magdy is Egyptian, but he moved _____ many years ago. SB
 a abroad b broad c a board d board
3. Mr. Magdy's family packed _____ outfits, hats and sunglasses for the hot weather. SB
 a heavy b warm c tight d light
4. They are very _____ to see tombs of ancient Egyptian kings. SB
 a nervous b crowded c excited d worried
5. The family is going to _____ the amazing temples of Karnak and Luxor. SB
 a forget b explore c spend d play
6. The _____ was built for a great king thousands of years ago.
 a felucca b island c tomb d outfit
7. I _____ take my passport and ticket to the airport. SB
 a am going to b is going to c are going to d going to
8. Nour _____ pack her suitcase with clothes. SB
 a am going to b is going to c going to d are going to
9. My friends _____ stay in a hotel by the beach. SB
 a am going to b going to c are going to d is going to
10. We _____ wear our sunglasses at the beach. SB
 a going to b is going to c are going to d am going to

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

powerful - statues - explore - Pyramids - heritage

After many years living abroad, Amr decided to move back to his home country, Egypt. He wants his children to see its wonderful ① _____. They will take a one-week vacation to ② _____. They plan to see the Great ③ _____ of Giza and the Sphinx. It will be a special chance for them to learn about the ④ _____ pharaohs.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. He **(are)** going to stay in a hotel. SB
2. They **(am)** going to take their passports. SB
3. I **(is)** going to pack my suitcase. SB
4. She **(am)** going to wear sunglasses. SB
5. She **(going)** to travel tomorrow. SB
6. They **(is)** going to pack their suitcases. SB
7. We are **(go)** to the beach. SB
8. He **(are)** going to have a ticket. SB
9. Malak **(not/ going)** eat fast food this week; she wants to be healthy.
10. Why is Ahmed going to **(traveling)** alone?
11. **(Do)** you going to help me with my homework later?
12. The kids **(not/ going)** play football because the park is closed.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. take - a train - **They** - to - going to - Luxor - south - are.

.....

2. travel - his - home country - going - **Marwan** - is - to.

.....

3. many - **Mr. Maged** - abroad - moved - ago - years.

.....

4. suitcases - ready - **We** - our - with - getting - are.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. How is the family traveling from Luxor to aswan

.....

2. my family packed light outfits for the hot weather

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



camping	تخييم / معسكر	campfire	نار المعسكر / نار التخييم
warm	دافئ	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
campsite	موقع المعسكر	hike	يتنزه / يمشي لمسافات طويلة
tent	خيمة	set up	ينصب / يركب



Other words

كلمات أخرى

desert	صحراء	mountain	جبل
items	أغراض / أدوات	desert plants	نباتات صحراوية
Wadi El Gemal Park	محمية وادي الجمال	lake	بحيرة
torch	مصباح يدوي		



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

go on a school camping trip	يذهب في رحلة تخييم مدرسية	take photos	يلتقط صوراً
teach about	يعلم عن / يدرّس عن	share moments with	يشارك اللحظات مع
sit around	يجلس حول	keep clean	يحافظ على نظافة
tell stories	يروي قصصاً	in the evening	في المساء
look for	يبحث عن	on the nature trail	على المسار الطبيعي
lots of	كثير من		



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

imagine	يتخيل
receive	يستلم / يتلقى
arrive	يصل

Past ماضٍ

imagined
received
arrived

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

bring	يُحضّر / يجلب
leave	يترك / يغادر

Past ماضٍ

brought
left

Study the following

- 1 Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school camping trip.

في نهاية الأسبوع القادم، سيذهب صفنا في رحلة تخييم مدرسية إلى محمية وادي الجمال الجميلة.

- 2 We are going to pack our suitcases with warm clothes, a torch, and a water bottle.

سنقوم بتوضيب حقائب سفرنا بملابس دافئة، ومصباح يدوي، وزجاجة ماء.

- 3 The campsite is going to be crowded.

سيكون موقع المعسكر مزدحماً.

- 4 We are going to set up our tents near some amazing mountains.

سنقوم بنصب خيامنا بالقرب من بعض الجبال المدهشة.

- 5 Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals.

ستعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء.

- 6 In the evening, we are going to sit around a campfire and tell stories.

في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونروي القصص.

- 7 I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

سأقوم بالتقاط الكثير من الصور لأشارك اللحظات السعيدة مع عائلتي.

- 8 We are going to hike on a nature trail and look for special birds.

سنتنزه في مسار طبيعي ونبحث عن طيور مميزة.

- 9 We are going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean.

سننظف موقع المعسكر بعناية للحفاظ على نظافته.

- 10 This is going to be my first camping trip.

ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخييم لي.

- 11 I think the camping trip is going to be so much fun!

أعتقد أن رحلة التخييم ستكون ممتعة جداً!

Read the story

اقرأ القصة :

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص :



Our School Camping Trip رحلة المعسكر المدرسية الخاصة بنا

Next weekend, our class is going to travel to the beautiful Wadi El Gemal Park for a school **camping**⁽¹⁾ trip. We are going to pack our suitcases with **warm**⁽²⁾ clothes, a torch, and a water bottle. Our teacher told us those who want to go on the trip, they need to receive their bus tickets today. She said the **campsite**⁽³⁾ is going to be crowded because another school is visiting too.



في نهاية الأسبوع القادم، سيذهب صفنا في رحلة تخييم مدرسية إلى محمية وادي الجمال الجميلة. سنقوم بتعبئة حقائب سفرنا بملابس دافئة، ومصباح يدوي، وزجاجة ماء. أخبرتنا معلمتنا أن الطلاب الذين يريدون الذهاب في الرحلة، عليهم استلام تذاكر الأتوبيس الخاصة بهم اليوم. وقالت إن موقع المعسكر سيكون مزدحماً لأن مدرسة أخرى ستقوم بالزيارة أيضاً.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- تخييم
- ٢- دافئ
- ٣- موقع المعسكر / المخيم
- ٤- ينصب / يركب
- ٥- الخيام
- ٦- نار المخيم
- ٧- يمشي لفترات طويلة
- ٨- مسار طبيعي
- ٩- يبحث عن

When we arrive, we are going to **set up**⁽⁴⁾ our **tents**⁽⁵⁾ near some amazing mountains. Our teacher is going to teach us about desert plants and animals. In the evening, we are going to sit around a **campfire**⁽⁶⁾ and tell stories. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family.

عندما نصل، سنقوم بنصب خيامنا بالقرب من بعض الجبال المدهشة. ستعلمنا معلمتنا عن نباتات وحيوانات الصحراء. في المساء، سنجلس حول نار المخيم ونروي القصص. سأقوم بالتقاط الكثير من الصور لأشارك اللحظات السعيدة مع عائلتي.

The next morning, we are going to **hike**⁽⁷⁾ on a **nature trail**⁽⁸⁾ and **look for**⁽⁹⁾ special birds.

في صباح اليوم التالي، سنتنزه في مسار طبيعي ونبحث عن طيور مميزة.

Before we leave, we are going to clean the campsite carefully to keep it clean. This is going to be my first camping trip, and I think it is going to be so much fun!

قبل أن نغادر، سننظف موقع المعسكر بعناية للحفاظ على نظافته. ستكون هذه أول رحلة تخييم لي، وأعتقد أنها ستكون ممتعة جداً!

Word Building skills



ظروف تلتصق بـ "يا" (Adverbs ending in -ly)

1 What is an adverb? ما هو الظرف / الحال ؟

- ⊙ An adverb is a word that tells us **how we do something**

الظرف هو كلمة تصف لنا كيفية القيام بشيء ما .

2 How can we form adverbs? كيف يمكننا تكوين الظروف ؟

- ⊙ We can form many adverbs by **adding -ly to adjectives**.

يمكننا تكوين العديد من الظروف بإضافة "يا" إلى الصفات .

quick سريع → quickly بسرعة The rabbit runs **quickly**.

loud عال → loudly بصوت عال The children sing **loudly**.

careful حذر / حريص → carefully بحذر / بحرص She paints the picture **carefully**.

quiet هادئ → quietly بهدوء She walked **quietly** into the library.

brave شجاع → bravely بشجاعة He walked **bravely** in the forest.

slow بطيء → slowly ببطء The tortoise walks **slowly**.

strong قوى → strongly بقوة He pushed the door **strongly**.

Note: لاحظ

- إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) ويسبقها حرف ساكن، نحذف (y) ونضيف (ily) لنحول الصفة إلى ظرف

happy سعيد → happily بسعادة

The kid sings **happily**.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The family is going on a boat trip.	☐	☐
2. They will set up their tent near a lake.	☐	☐
3. The sister is going to take photos.	☐	☐
4. At night, they will sit around a campfire.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We set up our _____ near the lake for the night. SB
 a temple b ancient c tent d hike
- Let's _____ to the top of that hill to see the view. SB
 a camp b swim c fly d hike
- In the evening, they are going to _____ around a campfire and tell stories. SB
 a walk b run c sit d write
- The students are going to look for special birds on the nature _____. SB
 a tent b camping c plants d trail
- The injured man walked _____ to the chair. SB
 a highly b slowly c bravely d strongly
- Please close the door _____ so you don't wake the baby. SB
 a quietly b quickly a strongly b loudly
- The soldier _____ fights to protect his country. SB
 a highly b quietly c bravely d slowly
- I _____ recommend that you study for the test. SB
 a slowly b carefully c strongly d happily
- The old car climbed the hill _____. SB
 a highly b weakly c happily d badly

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The children laughed **(loud)** at the funny story. SB
2. She walked **(quiet)** into the library. SB
3. Ali solved the puzzle **(quick)** and smiled. SB
4. My brother plays football **(happy)** with his friends. SB
5. The artist painted the picture **(careful)**. SB

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. be - is - crowded - to - **The campsite** - going.
.....
2. mountains - set up - tents - are going to - our - **We** - near - the.
.....
3. clean - going - to - **We** - campsite - carefully - are - the.
.....
4. be - trip - much - is - fun - going - **The camping** - to - so.
.....

5 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A camping trip

set up tents - hike - campfire

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات:



the Red Sea
Koshari

البحر الاحمر
كشري

invite
promise

يدعو
يعد



Other words

كلمات اخرى

invitation
delicious

دعوة
لذيذ

vehicle
fact

مركبة / عربة
حقيقة



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

ride a boat
on the Nile River
show .. around

يركب قارباً
في نهر النيل
يأخذ (شخصاً) في جولة

travel on a bus/ train
at the scenery

يسافر بالأتوبيس / بالقطار
عند المنظر الطبيعي



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

miss يفتقد
try يجرب

Past ماضٍ

missed
tried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

ride يركب
forget ينسي

Past ماضٍ

rode
forgot

Language notes

ملاحظات لغوية

promise + subject + will + inf. يعد

Ex: I promise you'll have the best time!.

Study the following

- 1 I hope you are doing well! آمل أن تكون بخير!
- 2 I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. أريد أن أدعوك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف.
- 3 Egypt is an amazing country with lots of fun places to see! مصر بلد مذهل وبه الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة لرؤيتها!
- 4 You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza-they're so big and old! يجب عليك زيارة أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى-إنها ضخمة وقديمة جداً!
- 5 We can ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. يمكننا ركوب قارب في نهر النيل ورؤية البحر الأحمر الجميل.

Writing Skills



How to write email invitation كيفية كتابة دعوة عبر البريد الإلكتروني

1 Greeting

التحية

- ⊙ Start with "Dear [Name]," and a friendly opening.

تبدأ بتحية الشخص ومقدمة ودية

Ex: Dear Max, (ذكر الاسم) تحية الشخص

- ⊙ I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much.

مقدمة ودية

2 Invitation

الدعوة

- ⊙ I want to invite you to + اذكر الدعوة

Ex: I want to invite you to visit Egypt!

3 Describe Places

صف أماكن

- ⊙ Pick 2-3 landmarks and write 1-2 sentences about each.

اختر ٢-٣ معالم واكتب جملة أو جملتين عن كل منها.

Ex: You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza-they're so big and old!

4 Food/ Activity

الأطعمة/ الأنشطة

Ex: We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea.

Don't forget to try Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious!

5 Closing

الخاتمة

Ex: Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

اسمك

Read the following email invitation:

أقرأ دعوة البريد الإلكتروني التالية:

Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Dear Max,

عزيزي ماكس،

I hope you are doing well! I miss you so much. I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. It's an amazing country with lots of fun places to see!

أمل أن تكون بخيراً! أفتقدك كثيراً. أريد أن ادعوك لزيارة مصر هذا الصيف. إنها بلد مذهل وبه الكثير من الأماكن الممتعة التي يمكن رؤيتها!

You must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza-they're so big and old! We can also ride a boat on the Nile River and see the beautiful Red Sea. Don't forget to try Egyptian food like koshari. It's delicious!

يجب عليك زيارة أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى-إنها ضخمة وقديمة جداً! يمكننا أيضاً ركوب قارب في نهر النيل ورؤية البحر الأحمر الجميل. لا تنس أن تجرب الطعام المصري مثل الكشري. إنه لذيذ!

My family and I will show you around. I promise you'll have the best time!

Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

سأقوم أنا وعائلتي باصطحابك في جولة (لإطلاعك على المعالم). أعدك بأنك ستقضي أفضل وقت!

الرجاء إخباري إذا كان بإمكانك المجيء. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك!

Your friend,

Ali

صديقك،

علي

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I hope you are well!

- a** doing **b** making **c** having **d** missing

2. I want to my friends to visit my new flat.

- a** remember **b** forget **c** invite **d** play

3. Koshari is a Egyptian food.

- a** terrible **b** delicious **c** bad **d** horrible

4. I like to ride a boat the Nile River.

- a** of **b** on **c** at **d** with

5. Come to Egypt and I will show you

- a** back **b** round **c** around **d** forward

6. I you'll have the best time!

- a** invite **b** ride **c** travel **d** promise

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

SB

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

wait - promise - invite - forget - famous

John wants to invite his friend Marwan to visit Italy. He tells him about the Leaning Tower of Pisa because it is a very ① building. They can also visit old bridges in Venice. John asks Marwan not to ② to try Italian pizza because it is his favorite food. John ③ Marwan to come soon. He can't ④ to see him!

3 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. ride - on - Nile River - a boat - We - the - can.

2. with - is - fun - country - Egypt - places - an amazing - lots of.

3. Pyramids - Giza - big - are - and - The Great - old - of.

4. invite - visit - I - to - Egypt - want - you - to.

5. is - a - Koshari - Egyptian - delicious - food.

6. to school - are - way to - Buses - a cheap - travel.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. why do people pack suitcases when they travel

SB

2. Don't forget to try egyptian food like koshari

Review

on Unit 3



suitcase

حقيرة سفر



pack

يحزم / يعين (الأمعة)



travel

يسافر



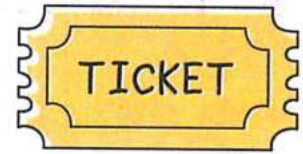
crowded

مزدحم



beach

شاطئ



ticket

تذكرة



The Pyramids

الأهرامات



Egyptian Temple

معبد مصري



a boat on the Nile River

قارب في نهر النيل

trip	رحلة	vacation	إجازة / عطلة
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
home country	الوطن الأم / البلد الأصلي	pharaohs	الفرعون
Egyptian	مصري	ancient Egyptian kings	ملوك مصر القدماء
the Great Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى	Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية
the Sphinx	أبو الهول	open-air museum	متحف مفتوح
tomb	مقبرة	island	جزيرة
camping	تخييم / معسكر	campfire	نار المعسكر / نار التخييم
warm	دافئ	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
campsite	موقع المعسكر	hike	يتنزه / يمشي لمسافات طويلة
tent	خيمة	set up	ينصب / يركب
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	invite	يدعو
Koshari	كشري	promise	يعد

Language in Use

سوف مع الخطط المستقبلية "Going to" for future plans

1 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I	+ am	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

2 Negative: النفي

I	+ am	} + not + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

3 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Am	+ I	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر ؟
IS + he, she, it, اسم مفرد		
Are + we, They, You, اسم جمع		

⊙ Wh- question: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh-word كلمة استفهام	am + I	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر ؟
	is + he, she, it, اسم مفرد	
	are + we, they, you, اسم جمع	

4 Key words : الكلمات الدالة

قريبًا soon - القادم (الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة) (week / month / year) next - غدا tomorrow



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

A country you want to travel to

I want to travel to Japan. I believe it is an amazing country. I can't wait to see the beautiful mountains and busy cities. I will pack my suitcase. I will take my camera for this special trip.

2

Lesson 3

A camping trip

Our class is going on a school camping trip to Wadi El Gemal. We are going to set up our tents and hike on a nature trail. At night, we are going to sit around a campfire. I am going to take lots of photos to share happy moments with my family. I think the trip is going to be so much fun!..

3

Test Al-Azhar

An invitation to visit Egypt

Dear Alex,

I hope you are doing well! I want to invite you to visit Egypt this summer. You can see the amazing Great Pyramids of Giza and take a boat on the Nile River. Don't forget to try delicious Egyptian food like Koshari.

Please let me know if you can come. I can't wait to see you!

Your friend,

Anas

4

Test on Unit 3

A trip to Alexandria

I am excited for our family trip to Alexandria. We are going to visit the beautiful Bibliotheca Alexandria and the old Qaitbay Citadel. We will spend the whole day by the sandy beach. I want to swim and build sandcastles with my brother. It will be a wonderful summer vacation.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



- Salma's family is going on a trip to the high
 a beach b mountains c city d river
- They will hike on a long nature trail and look for special
 a stars b plants c flowers d shells
- At night, they will make a/an
 a campsite b campfire c photo d adventure

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل :

forget - warm - suitcase - hike - bad

Sofia : Dalida, are you excited about our school camping trip next week?

Dalida : Yes, I am so excited! What should we pack in our ① - - - - - ?

Sofia : We need ② - - - - - clothes for the evening, a torch, and of course, we must not ③ - - - - - our toothbrushes!

Dalida : I can't wait to ④ - - - - - on the nature trail and sit around the campfire at night.

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

- Before a trip, I always my clothes carefully in my suitcase. SB
 a pack b travel c move d set up
- The were the powerful kings of ancient Egypt.
 a engineers b doctors c pilots d pharaohs
- they going to explore the Pyramids?
 a Do b Have c Are d Can
- My brother to play football because it is raining.
 a is not going b not going c are not going d am not going

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. I am go to visit my cousins next week. (SB) (.....)
2. What are he going to cook for lunch? (.....)
3. My friends are going to having a party next month. (.....)
4. The rabbit runs quick. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am glad we are going to my grandparents' village. It is very quiet, not crowded like the city. My grandma promised to cook delicious traditional food. I will help my grandpa in his garden. I feel very peaceful about this trip. We will spend a whole week there. I will not use my phone; instead, I will talk and listen to their stories from their childhood. I believe this will be the most relaxing vacation I have ever had.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The village is very crowded.	☐	☐
2. The writer will listen to stories about grandparents' childhood.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. How long will they stay in the village?
 - a two days b three days c seven days d two weeks
4. How does the writer feel about the trip?
 - a excited b peaceful c worried d angry
5. What did grandma promise to cook?
 - a fast food b traditional food c pizza d dessert

6 Write an email of about 4 sentences to your friend from America inviting him to visit Egypt:

اكتب ايميل من (4) جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Egypt - Pyramids - Koshari - the Nile River

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Mazen's trip to Luxor and Aswan is next week.

T	F
☐	☐

2. He is going to explore an open-air museum in Luxor.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

3. He is going to take a train from Luxor to Aswan.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

4. In Aswan, he is going to ride a felucca boat.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last summer, my family and I went near the mountains.

SB

a cleaning b running c camping d singing

2. The archaeologists discovered an statue in the desert.

SB

a green b ancient c new d modern

3. your teacher going to give you homework?

a Does b Is c Are d Will

4. We are going to the campsite in the afternoon.

a cleans b clean c cleaning d cleaned

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

desert - warm - pack - tent - back

I am going on a camping trip next week. I am going to ① five important items. First, a big ② for light at night. Second, a bottle of water because the desert is hot. Third, ③ clothes for the cold evening. Fourth, my toothbrush to keep clean. Fifth, a small ④ to sleep in.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Retal. I love traveling to other countries and exploring different places. This year, I am going to travel to Italy and Japan.

First, I will visit Italy. I want to see the Colosseum in Rome and eat pizza in Naples. The history there is **very old**. After that, I will fly to Japan. I am excited to see the tall buildings in Tokyo and the peaceful temples in Kyoto. I want to try Japanese sushi. I will take many photos to remember these two amazing countries.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Retal wants to visit Rome to

☐ a eat pizza

☐ b see the Colosseum

☐ c play football

☐ d eat fruits

2. The phrase "**very old**" is similar in meaning to

☐ a ancient

☐ b quiet

☐ c terrible

☐ d wonderful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

.....

4. Which countries is Retal going to visit this year? Why?

.....

5. Why is it important to take many photos?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. We (**be**) going to see the ancient temples this weekend.

SB

2. I (**not/ going**) watch that film; it's scary.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. you - I - are - doing - hope - well.

2. need - their - tickets - The students - receive - bus - to.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. a train can carry many people at once

2. What are you going to do next friday

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

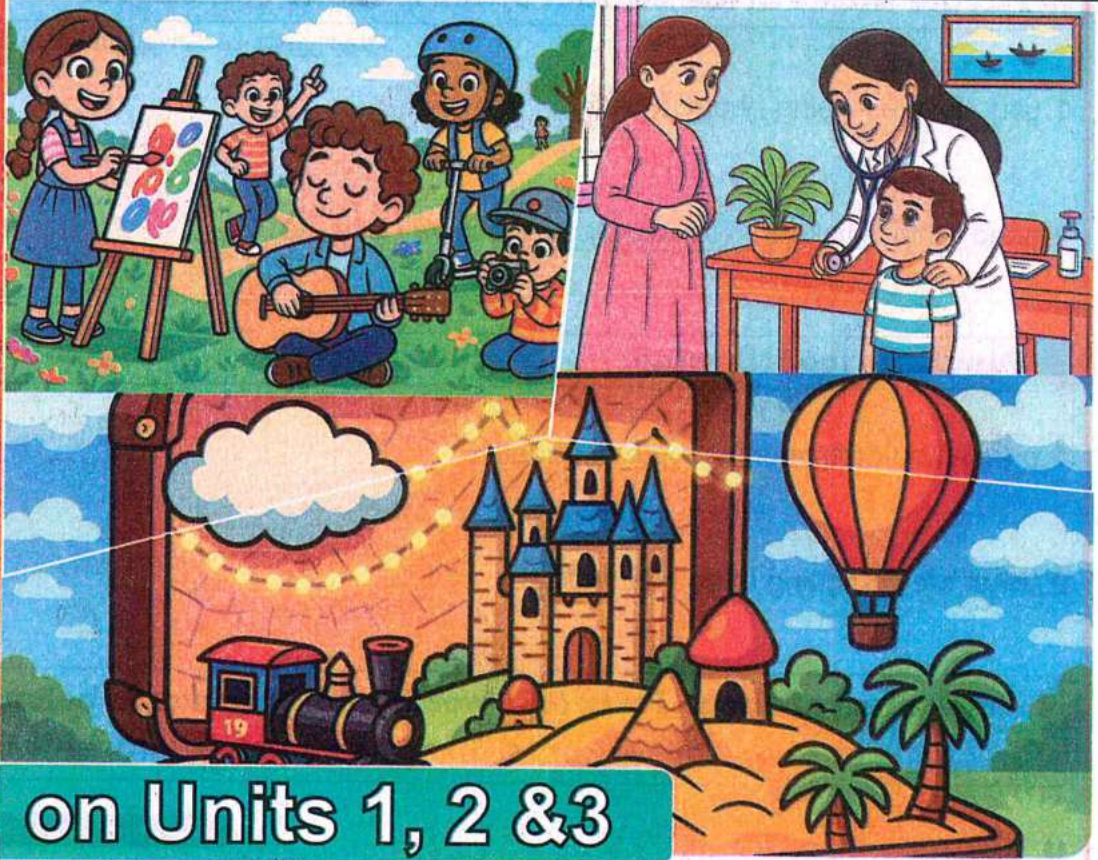
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

A trip to Alexandria

excited - build sandcastles - wonderful

Review 1



on Units 1, 2 & 3

Objectives of Review 1

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 1 - 3.

- يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

- To evaluate progress in Units 1 - 3.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطلاب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١ إلى ٣.

Review 1 ★ Units 1 - 2 & 3

Unit 1

Key vocabulary



playing board games

لعب ألعاب الطاولة (الألعاب اللوحية)



cycling

ركوب الدراجات



skating

التزلج



painting

الرسم



singing

الغناء



solving puzzles

حل الألغاز



playing the piano

العزف على البيانو



crafting with paper

الحرف اليدوية بالورق

hobby	هواية	creativity	الإبداع
talent show	عرض المواهب	strong	قوى
drawing	الرسم	energetic	حيوى / نشيط
free time	وقت الفراغ	board games	العاب لوحية
teamwork	العمل الجماعى	arrangement	ترتيب / تنسيق
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	friendship	صداقة
patience	الصبر		

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Expressing Ability التعبير عن القدرة

1- In the present في الحاضر

Ex: We use "can" to show what someone is able to do.

- نستخدم "can" لنظهر ما يستطيع شخص ما فعله.

Form: التكوين

Subject + can + inf. فعل في المصدر. (يستطيع)

Ex: She can play the piano.

Negative: النفي

Subject + cannot (can't) + inf. فعل في المصدر. (لا يستطيع)

Ex: He can't ride a bicycle.

- They can't swim well.

Question: السؤال

Can + subject + inf. هل يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word فعل في المصدر + can + subject + inf. كلمة استفهام

Ex: Can Sandy draw a picture?

- What hobbies can you do right now?

2- In the past في الماضي

Ex: We use "could" to show what someone was able to do in the past.

نستخدم "could" للتعبير عما كان شخص ما قادراً على فعله في الماضي.

Form: التكوين

Subject + could + inf. فعل في المصدر. (كان يستطيع)

Ex: I could read stories when I was six.

Negative: النفي

Subject + could not (couldn't) + inf. فعل في المصدر. (لم يستطع)

Ex: She couldn't draw when she was younger.

Question: السؤال

Could + subject + inf. هل كان يستطيع؟ فعل في المصدر

Wh-word فعل في المصدر + could + subject + inf. كلمة استفهام

Ex: Could Nancy swim well when she was four?

- What hobbies could you do in the past?

Unit 2

Key vocabulary



sore throat

التهاب الحلق



headache

صداع



fever

حمى



cough

كحة (سعال)



stomachache

ألم في المعدة

clinic	عيادة	care	رعاية / عناية
check-up	فحص طبي	receptionist	موظف الاستقبال
examination room	غرفة الفحص	tests	اختبارات / فحوصات
serious	خطير	heal (v)	يشفى / يلتئم الجرح
pharmacy	صيدلية	donate (v)	يتبرع
medicine	دواء	check in	يسجل الوصول
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	sick leave	إجازة مرضية
treatment	علاج	request	طلب
hope	أمل	healthy tip	نصيحة صحية
donation	تبرع		

Language in Use

Have to / Don't have to vs. Must / Mustn't for health rules

A Affirmative **has to/ have to** يضطر أن

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (has to/ have to) when it's necessary to do something.

• نستخدم (has to/ have to) عندما يكون من الضروري فعل أمر ما

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **has to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

Ex: I **have to** see the doctor because I have a fever

B Negative **don't have to/ doesn't have to** غير مضطر أن

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (doesn't/don't have to) to talk about things that are not necessary.

• نستخدم (doesn't/don't have to) عندما يكون فعل شيء غير ضروري (لا يوجد إلزام فلديك حرية الاختيار).

Form: التكوين

I, We, They, You, اسم جمع + **don't have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

He, She, It, اسم مفرد + **doesn't have to** + **inf.** فعل في المصدر.

Ex: You **don't have to** stay in bed if you only have a small headache.

Must

A Affirmative **must** يجب أن

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (must) to talk about necessity and obligation.

• نستخدم (must) بمعنى (يجب أن) للتعبير عن الضرورة (ما يجب علينا فعله) وعادة ما تكون إلزام قاعدة مهمة (نصيحة قوية).

Form: التكوين

Subject + **must** + **inf.** مصدر الفعل

Ex: We **must** wash our hands before eating food.

B Negative **mustn't** لا يجب أن

Usage: الاستخدام

We use (mustn't) to say that it is important not to do something.

• نستخدم (mustn't) بمعنى (لا يجب أن) للتعبير عن شيء من المهم ألا نفعله. (إلزام بعدم فعل شيء ليس لديك اختيار)

Unit 3

Key vocabulary



suitcase حقيبة سفر



pack يحزم / يعين (الأمثلة)



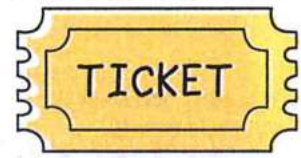
travel يسافر



crowded مزدحم



beach شاطئ



ticket تذكرة



The Pyramids

الأهرامات



Egyptian Temple

معبد مصري



a boat on the Nile River

قارب في نهر النيل

trip	رحلة	vacation	إجازة / عطلة
Bibliotheca Alexandrina	مكتبة الإسكندرية	Qaitbay Citadel	قلعة قايتباي
home country	الوطن الأم / البلد الأصلي	pharaohs	الفراعنة
Egyptian	مصري	ancient Egyptian kings	ملوك مصر القدماء
the Great Pyramids of Giza	أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى	Nile cruise	رحلة نيلية
the Sphinx	أبو الهول	open-air museum	متحف مفتوح
tomb	مقبرة	island	جزيرة
camping	تخييم / معسكر	campfire	نار المعسكر / نار التخييم
warm	دافئ	nature trail	مسار طبيعي
campsite	موقع المعسكر	hike	يتنزه / يمشي لمسافات طويلة
tent	خيمة	set up	ينصب / يركب
the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر	invite	يدعو
Koshari	كشري	promise	يعد

Language in Use

"Going to" for future plans سوف مع الخطط المستقبلية

1 Form: التكوين

⊙ Affirmative الإثبات

I	+ am	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

2 Negative: النفي

I	+ am	} + not + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر .
He, She, It, اسم مفرد	+ is	
We, They, You, اسم جمع	+ are	

3 Question: السؤال

⊙ Yes/ No question: السؤال بهل

Am	+ I	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر ؟
IS + he, she, it, اسم مفرد		
Are + we, They, You, اسم جمع		

⊙ Wh- question: السؤال بكلمة استفهام

Wh-word كلمة استفهام	am + I	} + going to + inf. فعل في المصدر ؟
	is + he, she, it, اسم مفرد	
	are + we, they, you, اسم جمع	

4 Key words : الكلمات الدالة

قريباً soon - القادم (الأسبوع / الشهر / السنة) (next (week / month / year) - غداً tomorrow

Test on Units

1,2&3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The students started a Hobby Club at their school.	☐	☐
2. Sara taught basketball skills in the playground.	☐	☐
3. Omar's excitement made other students want to join.	☐	☐
4. Laila organized a reading corner in the art room.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. She couldn't swim when she was five, but now she swim well.

a could

b can

c can't

d doesn't

2. She a cough.

a have

b has

c don't have

d aren't

3. The teacher's handwriting is

a readable

b breakable

c washable

d curable

4. She going to travel tomorrow.

a am

b are

c is

d does

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

joy - relax - healthy - teamwork - homework

Hobbies are the activities we love to do in our free time. They are not schoolwork, but things that bring us ① Hobbies are important because they help us ② have fun, and stay ③ For example, when people play board games or solve puzzles, they learn ④ and problem-solving.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

SB اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hobbies are activities that make our free time **enjoyable**. Some students love painting or crafting with paper, while others prefer playing the piano, singing, or building puzzles. Outdoor hobbies, such as cycling or skating, keep people active and healthy. Many schools organize talent shows where students perform for their friends and family. These activities teach teamwork, caring for others, and encourage discussion and sharing. Doing hobbies regularly gives excitement and a sense of achievement. Teachers often do surveys to understand students' favorite hobbies and arrange events accordingly.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The passage is mainly about
 a different kinds of hobbies b a football match
 c a visit to the doctor d school exams
- The word "**enjoyable**" is similar in meaning to
 a boring b fun
 c difficult d harmful

B. Answer the following questions:

- Name two hobbies mentioned in the passage.

- Why are outdoor hobbies important?

- How do schools encourage students to practice their hobbies?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- She couldn't (**drawing**) when she was younger.
- You (**mustn't**) brush your teeth every day to keep them healthy.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. takes - to - The nurse - the examination - room - them.
-

2. you - Did - your - suitcase - pack?
-

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

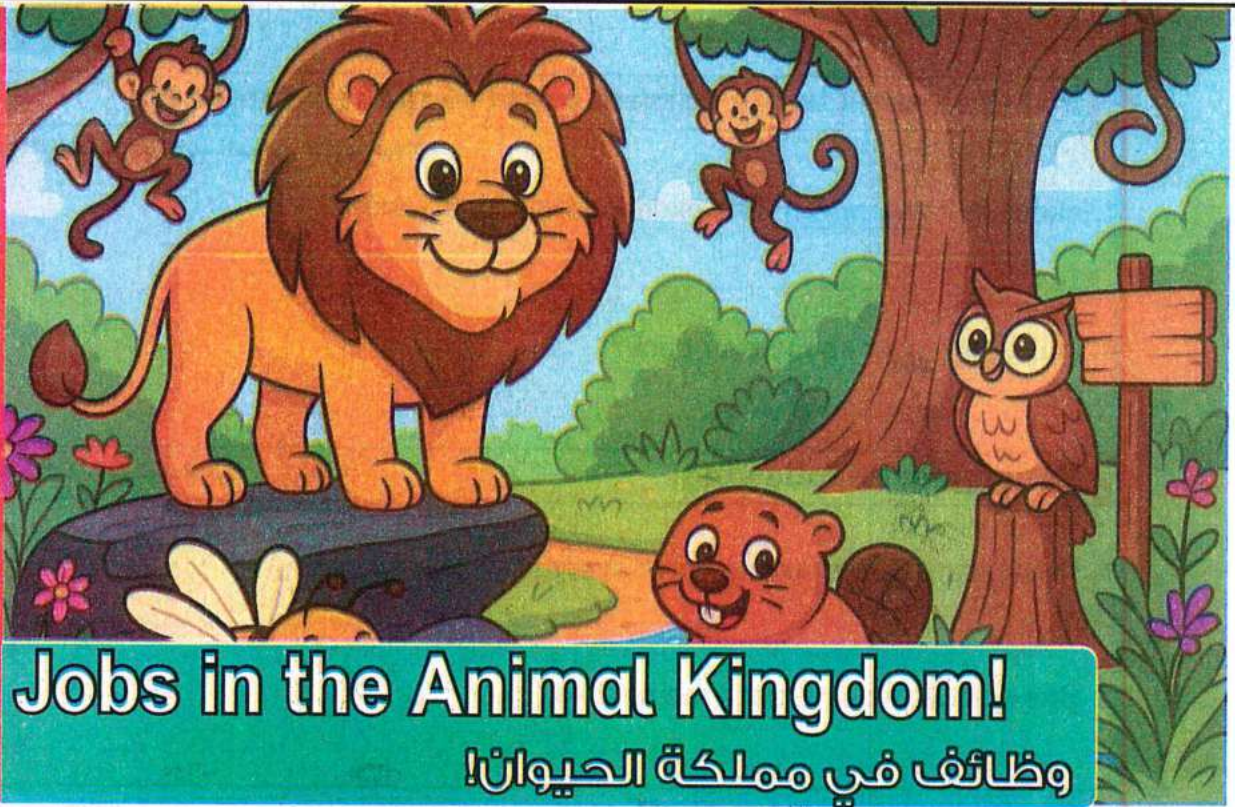
1. i love painting and cycling on weekends
-

2. She said we mustnt run in the hospital
-

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy Tips**vegetables - exercise - fruits**



Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

وظائف في مملكة الحيوان!

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- describe animal jobs using simple sentences. يصف الطالب وظائف الحيوانات باستخدام جمل بسيطة.
- take turns asking and answering questions about animal. يتبادل الطالب الأدوار في طرح الأسئلة والإجابة عنها حول الحيوانات.
- express opinions on appreciating and protecting animal helpers. يعبر الطالب عن رأيه بشأن تقدير وحماية الحيوانات المساعدة.

Listening:

- recognize key words about animal helpers. يتعرف الطالب على الكلمات المفتاحية المتعلقة بالحيوانات المساعدة.
- identify the gist in short dialogs about animals and their jobs. يحدد الطالب الفكرة العامة في الحوارات القصيرة حول الحيوانات ووظائفها.
- identify specific details in short dialogs about animals and their jobs. يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الدقيقة في الحوارات القصيرة حول الحيوانات ووظائفها.

Reading:

- identify the main idea of a text about animal jobs. يحدد الطالب الفكرة الرئيسية في نص حول وظائف الحيوانات.
- identify specific details of short informational texts about animal jobs. يحدد الطالب التفاصيل الدقيقة في نصوص معلوماتية قصيرة عن وظائف الحيوانات.
- guess the meaning of unknown words based on context. يخمن الطالب معنى الكلمات غير المعروفة بناءً على السياق.
- use the Present Simple and Present Continuous accurately. يستخدم الطالب زمن المضارع البسيط والمضارع المستمر بدقة.

Writing:

- write short descriptive paragraph about animal helpers using unit vocabulary. يكتب الطالب فقرة وصفية قصيرة عن الحيوانات المساعدة باستخدام مفردات الوحدة.
- use Present Simple to describe habits and jobs. يستخدم الطالب المضارع البسيط لوصف العادات والوظائف.
- use Present Continuous for actions happening now. يستخدم الطالب المضارع المستمر للأفعال التي تحدث الآن.
- design a poster showing how to appreciate and protect animal helpers. يصمم الطالب ملصقاً يوضح كيفية تقدير وحماية الحيوانات المساعدة.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المضردات،



police dogs

الكلاب البوليسية



guide dogs

كلاب الارشاد / التوجيه



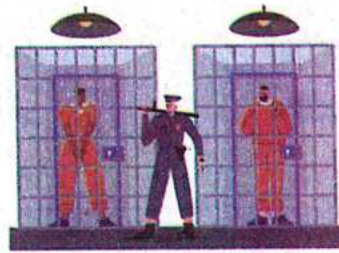
dolphins

الدلافين



horses

خيول



criminals

مجرمون



Other words

كلمات أخرى

animals	حيوانات	streets	شوارع
real jobs	وظائف حقيقية	countries	أقطار / بلاد
officers	ضباط	ability	قدرة / مقدرة
lost people	الناس المفقودة / التائهة	danger	خطر
nose	انف	better	افضل
far away	بعيدا	barks	نباح الكلاب
blind people	المكفوفين	quality	جودة
specially	خاصاً		

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

Adjectives صفات

brave	شجاع	sharp	حاد
smart	ذكي	fast	سريع
strong	قوي	upset	منزعج
amazing	مذهل	sleepy	نائم
blind	مكفوف / أعمى	nervous	متوتر
calm	هادئ	lazy	كسول
careful	حريص	shy	خجول
special	مميز	quiet	هادئ
scared	مرعوب / خائف	tired	متعب
loud	صاخب	angry	غضبان

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

from far away	من بعيد	feel much better	يشعر بتحسن
That's amazing!	ذلك مذهل	in the water	في المياه
for blind people	للمكفوفين	in danger	في خطر
move around	يتجول حول		

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	
help	يساعد
walk	يمشي
cross	يعبر
move	يتحرك
rescue	ينقذ
smell	يشم

Past ماض	
helped	
walked	
crossed	
moved	
rescued	
smelled	

Present مضارع	
know	يعرف
have	يملك / لديه
find	يجد
catch	يمسك / يقبض على
get	يحصل على / يصبح
spend	يقضي وقتاً
make	يجعل / يصنع
feel	يشعر
show	يوضح / يُظهر
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم

Past ماض	
knew	
had	
found	
caught	
got	
spent	
made	
felt	
showed	
hurt	

Study the following

1 Did you know that some animals have real jobs, just like people do?

هل كنت تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية، تمامًا مثل الناس؟

2 Well, police dogs are very brave and smart.

حسنًا، كلاب الشرطة شجاعة وذكية جدًا.

3 They help officers find lost people and catch criminals, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين باستخدام أنوفها القوية لشم الأشياء من مسافة بعيدة.

4 That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

هذا مذهل! هل لدى الكلاب الأخرى وظائف أيضًا؟

5 Yes, some guide dogs are for blind people.

نعم، بعض كلاب الإرشاد مخصصة للأشخاص المكفوفين.

6 They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around without getting hurt.

إنها تساعدهم على المشي بأمان، وعبور الشوارع، والتنقل دون أن يتعرضوا للأذى.

7 They are very calm and careful.

إنها هادئة وحريصة جدًا.

8 Horses help people feel calm and happy.

تساعد الخيول الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة.

9 Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or scared feel

much better. قضاء الوقت معها يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن كبير.

10 Are there any animals that help in the water?

هل توجد حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟

11 In some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea.

في بعض البلدان، تساعد الدلافين المنتقذة الأشخاص الذين يكونون في خطر في البحر.

12 These animals show us that helping others is a very special job.

تُظهر لنا هذه الحيوانات أن مساعدة الآخرين عمل مميز جدًا.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:



Tape Script

استمع إلى النص:



Teacher : Did you know that some animals have **real jobs**⁽¹⁾, just like people do?

المعلم: هل كنت تعلم أن بعض الحيوانات لديها وظائف حقيقية، تمامًا مثل الناس؟

Student : Really? What kind of jobs do they do? **الطالب:** حقًا؟ ما نوع الوظائف التي يقومون بها؟

Teacher : Well, police dogs are very brave and **smart**⁽²⁾. They help **officers**⁽³⁾ find lost people and catch **criminals**⁽⁴⁾, using their strong noses to smell things from far away.

المعلم: حسنًا، كلاب الشرطة شجاعة وذكية جدًا. إنها تساعد الضباط في العثور على الأشخاص المفقودين والقبض على المجرمين باستخدام أنوفها القوية لشم الأشياء من مسافة بعيدة.

Student : That's amazing! Do other dogs have jobs too?

الطالب: هذا مدهش! هل لدى الكلاب الأخرى وظائف أيضًا؟

Teacher : Yes, some guide dogs are for **blind people**⁽⁵⁾. They help them walk safely, cross streets, and move around **without**⁽⁶⁾ getting hurt. They are very calm and careful.

المعلم: نعم، بعض كلاب الإرشاد مخصصة للأشخاص المكفوفين. إنها تساعدهم على المشي بأمان، وعبور الشوارع، والتنقل دون أن يتعرضوا للأذى. إنها هادئة وحريصة جدًا.

Student : What about other animals?

الطالب: ماذا عن الحيوانات الأخرى؟

Teacher : Horses help people feel calm and happy. Spending time with them can make someone who is sad or **scared**⁽⁷⁾ feel much better.

المعلم: تساعد الخيول الناس على الشعور بالهدوء والسعادة. قضاء الوقت معها يمكن أن يجعل الشخص الحزين أو الخائف يشعر بتحسن كبير.

Student : Are there any animals that help in the water?

الطالب: هل توجد حيوانات تساعد في الماء؟

Teacher : Yes, in some countries, rescue dolphins help people who are in **danger**⁽⁸⁾ in the sea. These animals show us that helping others is a very **special**⁽⁹⁾ job.

المعلم: نعم، في بعض البلدان، تساعد الدلافين المنقذة الأشخاص الذين يكونون في خطر في البحر. تظهر لنا هذه الحيوانات أن مساعدة الآخرين عمل مميز جدًا.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- وظائف حقيقية
- ٢- ذكي
- ٣- ضباط
- ٤- مجرمون
- ٥- المكفوفون
- ٦- بدون
- ٧- خائف
- ٨- خطر
- ٩- مميز

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ) :

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Police dogs use their noses to help find lost people.	☐	☐
2. Guide dogs help people who can see very well.	☐	☐
3. Horses help people feel calm and happy.	☐	☐
4. Rescue dolphins help people in the sea when they are in danger.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

- Police dogs help officers find
a dolphins **b** blind people **c** lost people **d** horses
- Guide dogs are used to help walk safely.
a criminals **b** blind people **c** lazy people **d** scared animals
- Dolphins can rescue people who are in
a danger **b** streets **c** countries **d** schools
- Horses help people feel
a loud **b** sleepy **c** calm **d** nervous
- Police dogs have strong to smell things from far away.
a noses **b** hands **c** wings **d** ears
- Helping others is a very job.
a lazy **b** special **c** quiet **d** shy
- Rescue dolphins help people in the
a streets **b** water **c** desert **d** forest
- Police dogs are very brave and
a upset **b** tired **c** smart **d** lazy
- Spending time with horses makes people feel much
a louder **b** better **c** lazier **d** faster

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sea - streets - criminals - brave - good

Some animals have real jobs that help people. Police dogs are ① and smart. They find lost people and catch ② using their strong noses. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely and cross ③ Horses help people feel calm and happy. Rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the ④ These animals show that helping others is a very special job.

4 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Some animals have special jobs that help people in many ways. Police dogs are very brave and smart. They use their strong noses to find lost people and help officers catch criminals. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely and move around without getting hurt. Horses make people feel calm and happy when they are sad or scared. In some countries, rescue dolphins save people who are in danger in the water. These amazing animals show great ability and kindness, and they make the world a much better place.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Police dogs are very brave and
☐ a smart ☐ b lazy ☐ c nervous ☐ d shy
- Police dogs use their strong to find lost people and help officers catch criminals.
☐ a noses ☐ b hands ☐ c ears ☐ d legs

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do police dogs help officers?

- What is the main idea of the passage?

- Why are these animals important to people?

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. other - have - Do - jobs - too - dogs?

2. guide - quality - Which - dogs - have - do?

3. rescue - water - in - Dolphins - people - help - the.

4. Guide - walk - safely - people - help - blind - dogs.

5. dogs - Police - brave - very - are - and - smart.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. how can animals help us

2. horses help us feel calm

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Police dogs

brave - criminals - noses

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



water buffalo

جاموسة المياه



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



falcon

صقر



gecko

أبو بريص



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران



crops

محاصيل



loads

احمال



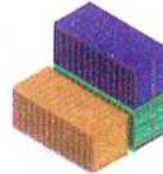
ripe

ناضج



routes

مسارات



containers

حاويات



plough

محراث



Other words

كلمات أخرى

lizard

سحلية

role

دور

pests

أفات

soil

التربة

hardworking

جاد في عمله

daily life

الحياة اليومية

villages

قري

market

سوق

supplies

مؤن

narrow

ضيق

dates

بلح

messenger

رسول

letters

خطابات

rats

فئران

waste

نفايات

useful

مفيد

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

work hard	يعمل بجهد	in homes	في المنازل
daily lives	الحياة اليومية	on walls	على الجدران
pull ploughs	يجرّ المحاريث	through villages	عبر القرى
carry heavy loads	يحمل أحمالاً ثقيلة	to the market	إلى السوق
know their routes	يعرفون طرقهم جيداً	between different places	بين أماكن مختلفة
have an important job	لهم وظيفة مهمة	over a field	فوق الحقل
break down waste	يحلل / يفتت المخلفات	for planting	للزراعة
work together	يعملون معاً	with his water buffalo	مع جاموسه
help each other	يساعدون بعضهم البعض	during the evening	خلال المساء

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
work يعمل	worked	know يعرف	knew
plant يزرع	planted	fly يطير	flew
carry يحمل	carried	see يرى	saw
look ينظر / يبحث	looked	make يصنع / يجعل	made
climb يتسلق	climbed	eat يأكل	ate
help يساعد	helped	grow يزرع	grew
prepare يجهّز	prepared		
pull يجرّ	pulled		
damage يدمر / يتلف	damaged		

Definitions

تعريفات

falcon الصقر	a fast bird that hunts animals in fields طائر سريع يصطاد الحيوانات في الحقول.
scarab beetle خنفساء الجعران	an insect that helps make soil better for plants حشرة تساعد على تحسين التربة للنباتات.
donkey حمار	a hard working animal that carries heavy loads حيوان جاد يحمل الأحمال الثقيلة.
gecko أبو بريص	a small lizard that eats insects inside houses سحلية صغيرة تأكل الحشرات داخل المنازل
pigeon حمامة	a bird that can find its way home from far away طائر يستطيع إيجاد طريقة للعودة من أماكن بعيدة.
water buffalo جاموسة المياه	a strong animal that pulls ploughs on farms. حيوان قوي يجر المحاريث في المزارع.

Study the following

1 In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives.

- في مصر، تعمل العديد من الحيوانات بجد لمساعدة الناس في حياتهم اليومية.

2 On farms, strong water buffaloes pull ploughs through the fields.

- في المزارع، تجرّ جاموسات المياه القوية المحاريث عبر الحقول.

3 A farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare the soil for planting crops.

- يعمل مزارع مع جاموسته ليجهّز التربة لزراعة المحاصيل.

4 Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets.

- الحمير تحمل أحمالاً ثقيلة عبر القرى وإلى الأسواق.

5 A donkey is probably walking to the market with baskets full of ripe dates.

- ربما يسير حمار إلى السوق بسلال ممتلئة بالبلح الناضج.

6 The donkeys know their routes very well.

- تعرف الحمير طرقها جيداً.

7 Pigeons have an important job as messengers.

- للحمام وظيفة مهمة كرسائل ناقلة.

8 Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops.

- تساعد الصقور المزارعين بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تفسد المحاصيل.

9 You might see a falcon flying over a field.

- قد ترى صقراً يطير فوق الحقل.

10 In homes, geckos climb on walls and eat insects.

- في المنازل يتسلق أبو بريص الجدران ويأكل الحشرات.

11 Scarab beetles work in the soil and break down waste.

- تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة وتحلل المخلفات.

12 They help make the earth better for growing plants.

- تساعد في جعل الأرض أفضل لزراعة النباتات.

13 People and animals can work together and help each other.

- يمكن للناس والحيوانات أن يعملوا معاً ويساعدوا بعضهم.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



Animal Helpers

مساعدى الحيوانات

In Egypt, many animals work hard to help people in their daily lives. On farms, strong water buffaloes⁽¹⁾ pull ploughs through the fields. Right now, a farmer is working with his water buffalo to prepare⁽²⁾ the soil for planting crops.

Donkeys carry heavy loads through villages and to markets. They transport⁽³⁾ crops, water containers, and supplies through narrow streets.⁽⁴⁾ At this moment, a donkey is probably walking to the market with baskets full of ripe dates.⁽⁵⁾ The donkeys know their routes very well.

Pigeons have an important job as messengers. They carry notes and letters between different places.

Falcons help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops. You might see a falcon flying over a field, looking for rats to catch. These birds fly high in the sky.

In homes, geckos climb on walls and eat insects. They are most active⁽⁶⁾ during the evening.

Scarab beetles work in the soil. They break down⁽⁷⁾ waste and help make the earth better for growing plants. All these animals – water buffaloes, donkeys, pigeons, falcons, geckos, and scarab beetles – play special roles in our life. They show how people and animals can work together and help each other in many useful⁽⁸⁾ ways.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- جاموس المياه
- ٢- يجهز
- ٣- ينقل
- ٤- شوارع ضيقة
- ٥- البلح الناضج
- ٦- نشيط
- ٧- يحل
- ٨- مفيد

في مصر، تعمل العديد من الحيوانات بجد لمساعدة الناس في حياتهم اليومية. في المزارع، تجرّ جاموسات قوية المحارث عبر الحقول. والآن يعمل مزارع مع جاموسه ليجّهز التربة لزراعة المحاصيل. الحمير تحمل أحمالاً ثقيلة عبر القرى وإلى الأسواق. وهي تنقل المحاصيل وحوايات الماء والإمدادات عبر الشوارع الضيقة. وفي هذه اللحظة ربما يسير حمار إلى السوق بسلال ممتلئة بالبلح الناضج. تعرف الحمير طرقها جيداً. للحمام وظيفة مهمة كرسول، فهي تحمل الملاحظات والرسائل بين أماكن مختلفة. تساعد الصقور المزارعين بصيد الحيوانات الصغيرة التي تضر بالمحاصيل. قد ترى صقراً يطير فوق الحقل باحثاً عن الفئران ليمسك بها. تطير هذه الطيور عالياً في السماء. في المنازل يتسلق أبو بريص الجدران ويأكل الحشرات، ويكون أكثر نشاطاً في المساء. تعمل خنافس الجعران في التربة، وتفكك المخلفات، وتساعد في جعل الأرض أفضل لزراعة النباتات. كل هذه الحيوانات – الجاموس، الحمير، الحمام، الصقور، أبو بريص، وخنافس الجعران – لها أدوار خاصة في حياتنا. وهي تُظهر كيف يمكن للناس والحيوانات أن يعملوا معاً ويساعدوا بعضهم بطرق مفيدة متعددة.

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Simple vs. Present Continuous

المضارع البسيط مقابل المضارع المستمر

A Present Simple المضارع البسيط

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم **Present Simple** للتعبير عن الحقائق، العادات، والوظائف.**Ex:** A falcon **hunts** small animals. (Fact حقيقة) الصقر يصطاد الحيوانات الصغيرة.**Ex:** Donkeys **carry** things every day. (Habit عادة / job وظيفة) الحمير تحمل الأشياء كل يوم.**Ex:** Water buffaloes **pull** ploughs. (job وظيفة) جاموس المياه يجر المحاريث.

2 Affirmative الإثبات

- في حالة الإثبات يتكون من:

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + (inf.) + s, es, ies مصدر الفعل

Ex: Geckos **eat** insects.

أبو بريص يأكل الحشرات.

do → does إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (s, ss, sh, ch, o, x) نضيف **es**.
wash → washesstudy → studies إذا كان الفعل آخره (y) وقبله حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ونضيف **ies**.
cry → cries

3 Negative النفي

I / You / We / They / اسم جمع + do not (don't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

He / She / It / اسم مفرد + does not (doesn't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

Ex: Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

لا تصطاد الصقور في الليل.

Ex: The water buffalo **doesn't work** in the city.

لا يعمل جاموس المياه في المدينة.

4 Question السؤال

- في حالة السؤال به هل ...؟

Do + I / you / we / they + (inf.) مصدر الفعل؟

Does + he / she / it + (inf.) مصدر الفعل؟

Ex: Does a gecko **eat** insects?

هل يأكل أبو بريص الحشرات؟

- Yes, it **does**. إجابة مثبتة. / No, it **doesn't**. إجابة منفية.

- في حالة السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام:

Wh-word + do / does + subject فاعل + (inf.) مصدر الفعل؟

Ex: What **do** donkeys **carry**?- They **carry** heavy loads.

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

every day
كل يومalways
دائماusually
عادةoften
غالباًon Mondays
كل يوم اثنين

B Present Continuous

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم **Present Continuous** للأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو في هذه اللحظة.

Ex: The donkey **is carrying** a heavy load. الحمار يحمل حملاً ثقيلاً الآن.

Ex: Look! The falcon **is flying** over the field. انظروا! الصقر يطير فوق الحقل الآن.

2 Affirmative الإثبات

I + **am** + (V + ing)
 He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is** + (V + ing)
 You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are** + (V + ing)

Ex: The gecko **is climbing** now. أبو بريص يتسلق الآن.

3 Negative النفي

I + **am not** ('m not) + (V + ing)
 He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is not** (isn't) + (V + ing)
 You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are not** (aren't) + (V + ing)

Ex: The pigeons **aren't flying** at the moment. الحمام لا يطير في الوقت الحالي.

4 Question السؤال

- في حالة السؤال بهل...؟

Am + I + (V + ing)?
Is + he / she / it + (V + ing)?
Are + you / we / they + (V + ing)?

Ex: **Is** the falcon **hunting** now? هل الصقر يصطاد الآن؟

- Yes, it is. نعم، يصطاد. - **إجابة منفية** لا، يصطاد. No, it isn't. - **إجابة مثبتة** نعم، يصطاد. - في حالة السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام:

Wh-word + **am / is / are** + **subject** + **V + ing**?

Ex: **A:** What's she **doing**? ماذا تفعل الآن؟ **B:** She's **playing** tennis. هي تلعب التنس.

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

now
الآن

right now
في الحال

at the moment
في هذه اللحظة

today
اليوم

Look!
انظروا!

Listen!
أستمع!

Checkup Exercise (✓)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Look! The pigeon a message right now.

SB

- a carry b is carrying c carrying d carries

2. What Heba and Amira like to play?

- a is b do c does d are

3. The falcon over the field at this moment.

SB

- a is hunting b hunts c hunted d hunt

4. My friend usually TV after school.

- a watch b watching c watches d watched

5. Does Amir his homework every day?

- a do b does c doing d did

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

اقرأ و اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1. A falcon (**is hunting**) small animals every day.

2. The donkey (**carries**) a heavy load right now.

3. Donkeys (**carrying**) things every day.

4. Look! The gecko (**eats**) an insect at the moment.

5. Water buffaloes (**pulling**) ploughs on farms every day.

6. The pigeons (**flies**) between different places right now.

7. The farmer (**work**) with his buffalo now.

SB

8. Falcons (**fly**) over the fields right now.

SB

9. A gecko (**eat**) insects every evening.

SB

10. Falcons (**hunt**) small animals at this moment.

11. Geckos (**is climbing**) on walls in homes every evening.

12. The scarab beetles (**work**) in the soil right now.

13. Pigeons are (**carry**) messages between villages.

SB

14. Right now, the farmer (**works**) with his water buffalo.

15. Donkeys (**is**) carrying heavy baskets to the market.

SB

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Birds and insects can't help people.	☐	☐
2. Geckos do nothing to insects.	☐	☐
3. Scarab beetles help the soil.	☐	☐
4. Falcons can hunt small animals.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Water buffaloes help farmers by pulling the
 a plough b lizard c pigeon d falcon
- Donkeys carry heavy to the market.
 a rats b loads c letters d glasses
- A pigeon can be a for sending messages.
 a messenger b scarab beetle c gecko d donkey
- Falcons hunt small animals called that damage crops.
 a pests b geckos c containers d crops
- Geckos are a type of
 a donkeys b pigeons c falcons d lizards
- Scarab beetles work in the to help plants grow.
 a soil b market c containers d streets
- Donkeys know their very well in villages.
 a routes b dates c letters d loads
- Farmers carry water in
 a pigeons b ploughs c containers d rats
- Dates are fruits that are when ready to eat.
 a narrow b ripe c useful d hardworking

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

10. Right now, the farmer with his water buffalo.
a is working **b** works **c** work **d** working
11. Donkeys things every day.
a carries **b** carry **c** is carrying **d** carrying
12. Look! The falcon over the field.
a flies **b** is flying **c** fly **d** flew
13. Water buffaloes usually ploughs on farms.
a pull **b** is pulling **c** pulls **d** pulling
14. At this moment, the pigeons in their cage.
a are flying **b** fly **c** flies **d** flying

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Some animals have important jobs that help people every day. Water buffaloes and donkeys help farmers by carrying crops, supplies, and heavy loads. Falcons hunt small animals that damage the crops. Pigeons carry messages between different places. Geckos eat insects in homes, and scarab beetles work in the soil to make the earth better for planting. These animals are hardworking and useful, and they make life easier for people in many ways.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Water buffaloes and donkeys help farmers by carrying
a crops **b** birds **c** letters **d** rats
2. Falcons hunt small animals that the crops.
a damage **b** help **c** water **d** carry

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How do water buffaloes and donkeys help farmers?

4. Why are falcons useful to farmers?

5. What is the text about?

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. help - How - people - geckos - do?

2. high - in - Falcons - the sky - fly.

3. work - the - Scarab - soil - beetles - in.

4. Pigeons - carry - messages - between - different - places.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Falcons usually (is flying) high in the sky.

2. The scarab beetles (breaks) down waste in the soil.

3. Water buffaloes (pulls) ploughs on farms every day.

4. The donkey (carry) a basket of dates to the market.

5. Right now, the gecko (climb) on the wall.

6. Pigeons (carries) letters between villages every morning.

7. Look! The farmer (plant) seeds with his water buffalo right now.

8. Donkeys (transports) containers of water through narrow streets.

9. Some animals (helping) people in their daily life in different ways.

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Animal Helpers

falcons - geckos - pigeons

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



cows

بقر



sheep

اغنام



guard dogs

كلاب حراسة



field

حقل



sweater

سترة



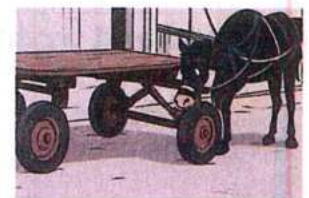
barn

حظيرة



grain

حبوب / غلال



carts

عربات كارو



Other words

كلمات أخرى

animal helpers

الحيوانات المساعدة

cheese

جبنة

thick

سميك

blankets

بطاطين

safe

آمن

mice

فئران

strong

قوي

gently

بلطف

clothes

ملابس

fresh milk

لبن طازج

grass

حشائش

wool

الصوف

smart

ذكي / بارع

chickens

دجاج

animals

حيوانات

heavy loads

أحمال ثقيلة

others

الآخرون

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وأحرف جر وعبارات

working hard

يعمل بجد

take good care of

يعتني جيدًا بـ

take care of us

يعتنون بنا

watching over

يراقب / يحرس

running around

يجري حول

lay eggs

يضع البيض

on the farm

في المزرعة

in the field

في الحقل

for drinking

من أجل الشرب

over the sheep

فوق الاغنام

around the sheep

حول الاغنام

by catching mice

عن طريق صيد الفئران

for breakfast

من أجل الإفطار

in many ways

بطرق كثيرة

Definitions تعريفات

farmer	مزارع	a person who grows food and raises animals شخص يزرع الطعام ويربي الحيوانات
field	حقل	an area of land with grass for animals مساحة من الأرض بها عشب للحيوانات
sheep	خروف	a farm animal that gives us thick wool to make clothes حيوان مزرعة يعطينا صوفًا كثيفًا لصناعة الملابس
guard dog	كلب حراسة	an animal that protects others حيوان يحمي الآخرين

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

work	يعمل
milk	يحلب
watch	يراقب
guard	يحرس
explain	يشرح
carry	يحمل

Past ماض

worked
milked
watched
guarded
explained
carried

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

say	يقول
give	يعطي
keep	يحافظ / يبقّي
lay	يضع (بيض)
sleep	ينام
take care	يعتني بـ
pull	يسحب
be (am / is / are)	يكون
show	يعرض
learn	يتعلم

Past ماض

said
gave
kept
laid
slept
took care
pulled
was / were
showed
learned / learnt

Study the following

- 1 Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today.

عمر وعائلته يزورون مزرعة عمه اليوم.

- 2 They see many animal helpers working hard.

يرون العديد من الحيوانات المساعدة تعمل بجد.

- 3 Cows give us fresh milk every day for drinking and making cheese.

الأبقار تعطينا حليبًا طازجًا كل يوم للشرب وصنع الجبن.

- 4 They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass.

يمشون إلى حقل آخر حيث تأكل الأغنام العشب.

- 5 The sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year.

الأغنام لديها صوف كثيف ودافئ ينمو طوال العام.

- 6 Once a year, workers carefully cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets.

مرة واحدة في السنة، يقوم العمال بقص الصوف بعناية لصنع السترات والبطاطين.

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

- 7 A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully. كلب ذكي يراقب الأغنام بعناية.
- 8 Near the barn, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. بالقرب من الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات البيض كل صباح للإفطار.
- 9 The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. العائلة ترى قطّة نائمة في الشمس.
- 10 The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain. القطّة تساعد عن طريق الإمساك بالفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب.
- 11 He shows Omar how the horses help pull carts around the farm. يري عمر كيف تساعد الخيول في سحب العربات حول المزرعة.
- 12 Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. الحمير قوية ويمكنها حمل أحمال ثقيلة.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



A Day on the Farm يوم في الحقل

Omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The cows are in the field. "Look! The farmer is milking a cow now," says Omar happily.⁽¹⁾ Cows give us fresh⁽²⁾ milk every day for drinking and making cheese. They walk to another field where sheep are eating grass. The sheep have thick, warm wool that grows all year. Once a year, workers carefully⁽³⁾ cut the wool to make sweaters and blankets. A smart dog is watching over the sheep carefully. The dog's job is to guard⁽⁴⁾ the sheep. Right now, the dog is running around the sheep to keep them safe. Near the barn, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast. The family sees a cat sleeping in the sun. The cat helps by catching mice that might eat the grain.⁽⁵⁾ Omar's uncle explains, "We take good care of all our animals, and they take care of us too." He shows Omar how the horses help pull carts around the farm. Donkeys are strong and can carry heavy loads. "We must always be kind to our animal helpers," the uncle says gently.⁽⁶⁾ Omar learns that farm animals are hard workers who help people in many ways.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- بسعادة
- ٢- طازج
- ٣- بحرص
- ٤- يحرس
- ٥- الحبوب
- ٦- بلطف

عمر وعائلته يزورون مزرعة عمه اليوم. يرون العديد من الحيوانات المساعدة تعمل بجد. الأبقار في الحقل. «انظروا! المزارع يحلب بقرة الآن»، يقول عمر بسعادة. الأبقار تعطينا حليباً طازجاً كل يوم للشرب وصنع الجبن. يمشون إلى حقل آخر حيث تأكل الأغنام العشب. الأغنام لديها صوف كثيف ودافئ ينمو طوال العام. مرة واحدة في السنة، يقوم العمال بقص الصوف بعناية لصنع السترات والبطاطين. كلب ذكي يراقب الأغنام بعناية. وظيفة الكلب هي حراسة الأغنام. الآن، الكلب يجري حول الأغنام ليحافظ على سلامتهم. بالقرب من الحظيرة، تضع الدجاجات البيض كل صباح للإفطار. ترى العائلة قطّة نائمة في الشمس. القطّة تساعد عن طريق الإمساك بالفئران التي قد تأكل الحبوب. يشرح عم عمر: «نحن نعتني جيداً بجميع حيواناتنا، وهم يعتنون بنا أيضاً». يري عمر كيف تساعد الخيول في سحب العربات حول المزرعة. الحمير قوية ويمكنها حمل أحمال ثقيلة. «يجب أن نكون دائماً لطفاء مع حيواناتنا المساعدة»، يقول العم بلطف. يتعلم عمر أن حيوانات المزرعة عمال مجتهدون يساعدون الناس بطرق كثيرة.

Word Building Skills



Words with the suffixes (-er / -or / -ist) اللاحقات

- **-er**

○ نضيف / **er** / بعد الفعل أو الاسم لتشير إلى الشخص الذي يقوم بالفعل.

⇒ **For example:** farm مزارع → **farmer** يزرع
- **-or**

○ تشبه / **er** / لكنها غالباً تأتي بعد بعض الكلمات الخاصة لتدل على الشخص.

⇒ **For example:** visit زائر → **visitor** يزور
- **-ist**

○ نضيف / **ist** / بعد الكلمة لتدل على الشخص المتخصص في شيء.

⇒ **For example:** special متخصص في شيء → **specialist** خاص

الكلمة الأساسية	اللاحقة	الكلمة الجديدة	كيف تنطقها	مثال بسيط
farm مزرعة	-er	farmer فلاح	farm-er	A farmer works in the field.
visit يزور	-or	visitor زائر	vis-it-or	A visitor comes to our school.
special خاص	-ist	specialist متخصص	spe-cial-ist	A specialist helps patients.
help يساعد	-er	helper مساعد	help-er	A helper assists others.
teach يدرس	-er	teacher مدرس	teach-er	A teacher teaches students.
piano بيانو	-ist	pianist عازف بيانو	piani-st	The pianist plays in the concert well.

Checkup Exercise (✓)

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ و اكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- Mr Tarek is a famous (**science**).
- My father is a (**farm**) who grows many crops.
- The (**act**) performed his role in the play well.
- There are a lot of (**visit**) in my party.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Water buffaloes are weak animals.	☐	☐
2. The farmer is working with his water buffalo right now.	☐	☐
3. Donkeys carry light loads through the streets.	☐	☐
4. A donkey is probably going to the market with baskets of ripe dates.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Cows give us to drink every day.
 a grain b fresh milk c wool d grass
- Sheep give us thick to make warm clothes.
 a cheese b milk c wool d grain
- A is an area of land with grass for animals.
 a load b field c sweater d cart
- A guard dog helps by keeping animals
 a heavy b safe c thick d fresh
- Chickens lay every morning.
 a wool b eggs c grain d grass
- A farmer works in the with animals.
 a sweater b field c blanket d clothes
- Mice like to eat from the farm.
 a milk b meat c grain d wool
- We should always be kind to animals and speak
 a thick b strong c gently d safe

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Farm animals help people every day on the farm. Cows give fresh milk, and sheep give warm wool for clothes. Guard dogs keep the animals safe, while cats catch mice near the barn. Chickens lay eggs for breakfast. Horses pull carts, and donkeys carry heavy loads. Farmers care for their animals kindly, and the animals help people in many useful ways. They work hard and live together on the farm every day.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Cows help people by giving
 a wool b eggs c. fresh milk d grain
- Guard dogs help by keeping the animals
 a hungry b safe c weak d small

B. Answer the following questions:

- How do donkeys help people on the farm?
- Why are cats useful on the farm?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

- are - the - field - in - The - cows.
- the sheep - guard - job - to - is - The - dog's.
- many - animal - helpers - working - hard - see - They.
- every - breakfast - for - lay - morning - Chickens - eggs.

5 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Farm friends

cows - dogs - donkeys

.....

.....

.....

Key vocabulary

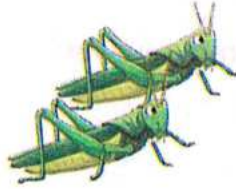
استمع إلى المفردات:



egret طائر ابوقردان



beak منقار



hoppers جراد



insect حشرة

documentary

فيلم وثائقي

narrator

راوي / حاكمي

Other words

كلمات أخرى

wildlife

الحياة البرية

crops

محاصيل

quickly

بسرعة

rice plants

نباتات الارز

back

ظهر

chemicals

مواد كيميائية

single

مفرد / فردي

feathers

ريش

control

تحكم

farmer

فلاح

screen

شاشة

sharp

حاد

alongside

محاذيا لـ / بجانب

flies

ذباب

hundreds

مئات

different

مختلف

easy

سهل

suddenly

فجأة

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

right now

الآن / في الوقت الحالي

on the screen

على الشاشة

standing in a field

يقف في حقل

alongside water buffaloes

إلى جانب جاموس الماء

on the buffaloes' backs

على ظهور الجاموس

in the fields

في الحقول

get a better view

يحصل على رؤية أفضل

healthier for people

أكثر صحة للناس

in a single day

في يوم واحد

because of these birds

بسبب هذه الطيور

against the green plants

مقابل / على خلفية النباتات الخضراء

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

watch	يشاهد
harm	يضر
raid	يهجم / ينقض
work	يعمل
bother	يزعج
use	يستخدم
appreciate	يقدر
provide	يوفر

watched
harmed
raided
worked
bothered
used
appreciated
provided

be (am / is / are)	يكون
say	يقول
eat	يأكل
stand	يقف
get	يحصل على
fly	يطير
make	يجعل

was / were
said
ate
stood
got
flew
made

Study the following

1 I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now.

أنا أشاهد فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحيوانات المساعدة الآن.

2 The narrator says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm

crops. يقول الراوي إن طيور أبو قردان تساعد المزارعين عن طريق أكل الحشرات التي تضر بالمحاصيل.

3 On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field.

على الشاشة، يقف طائر أبو قردان أبيض في حقل.

4 Suddenly, the egret raids quickly with its sharp beak.

فجأة، ينقض أبو قردان بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد.

5 It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. إنه يصطاد الجراد الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز.

6 Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water.

لدى طيور أبو قردان أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي في الماء.

7 These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields.

غالبًا ما تعمل هذه الطيور إلى جانب جاموس الماء في الحقول.

8 They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a better view.

أحيانًا تقف على ظهور الجاموس لتحصل على رؤية أفضل.

9 The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind.

يأكل أبو قردان الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع.

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

10 Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds.

لا يحتاج المزارعون إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور.

11 This makes the food healthier for people to eat.

هذا يجعل الطعام أكثر صحة للناس لتأكله.

12 Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a single day.

يمكن لطيور ابو قردان أن تأكل مئات الحشرات في يوم واحد.

13 They fly to different fields to find their food.

تطير إلى حقول مختلفة لتجد طعامها.

14 Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants.

ريشها الأبيض يجعل من السهل رؤيتها بين النباتات الخضراء.

15 Farmers appreciate these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

يقدر المزارعون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.

Read the text

اقرأ النص:

The Farmer's Feathered Friend

استمع إلى النص:



I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now.

The **narrator**⁽¹⁾ says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops.

On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret **raids**⁽²⁾ quickly with its sharp beak.

It is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants. Egrets have long legs that help them walk through water.

These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields. They sometimes stand on the buffaloes' backs to get a **better view**⁽³⁾. The egret eats flies that bother the buffalo, and the buffalo doesn't mind. Farmers don't need to use as many chemicals because of these birds. This makes the food

healthier for people to eat. Egrets can eat hundreds of insects in a **single**⁽⁴⁾ day. They fly to different fields to find their food. Their white feathers make them easy to spot against the green plants. Farmers **appreciate**⁽⁵⁾ these beautiful birds because they provide natural insect control.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- الراوي
- ٢- يهجم
- ٣- رؤية أفضل
- ٤- فردي
- ٥- يُقدر

أنا أشاهد فيلمًا وثائقيًا عن الحيوانات المساعدة الآن. يقول الراوي إن طيور ابو قردان تساعد المزارعين عن طريق أكل الحشرات التي تضر بالمحاصيل. على الشاشة، يقف طائر ابو قردان أبيض في حقل. فجأة، ينقض ابو قردان بسرعة بمنقاره الحاد.

إنه يصطاد الجراد الذي يأكل نباتات الأرز. لدى طيور ابو قردان أرجل طويلة تساعد على المشي عبر الماء.

غالبًا ما تعمل هذه الطيور إلى جانب جاموس الماء في الحقول. أحيانًا تقف على ظهور الجاموس للحصول على رؤية أفضل.

يأكل ابو قردان الذباب الذي يزعج الجاموس، والجاموس لا يمانع. لا يحتاج المزارعون إلى استخدام الكثير من المواد الكيميائية بسبب هذه الطيور.

هذا يجعل الطعام أكثر صحة للناس لتأكله. يمكن لطيور ابو قردان أن تأكل مئات الحشرات في يوم واحد. تطير إلى حقول مختلفة لتجد طعامها.

ريشها الأبيض يجعل من السهل رؤيتها بين النباتات الخضراء. يقدر المزارعون هذه الطيور الجميلة لأنها توفر مكافحة طبيعية للحشرات.

Descriptive Writing

الكتابة الوصفية



الكتابة الوصفية تعني وصف شيء أو شخص أو حيوان بطريقة تجعل القارئ يتخيل ما تراه بعينه.

1 Choose a topic اختر موضوعاً

اختر حيواناً يساعد الإنسان مثل: **The egret** (طائر أبو قردان).

2 Use strong adjectives استخدم صفات قوية

الصفات تجعل الوصف أجمل وأوضح.

sharp	حاد	patient	صبور	beautiful	جميل	natural	طبيعي
-------	-----	---------	------	-----------	------	---------	-------

Ex. The egret has a sharp beak.

أبو قردان لديه منقار حاد.

3 Show, don't tell صوّر الفكرة ولا تقلها مباشرة

لا تقل الجملة بشكل مباشر، بل اشرحها بالفعل.

Ex. The egret is helpful. خطأ.

أبو قردان مفيد.

Ex. The egret is catching harmful insects in the rice field. صح.

أبو قردان يصطاد الحشرات الضارة في حقل الأرز.

4 Use the correct tense استخدم الزمن الصحيح

Present Simple (المضارع البسيط)

نستخدمه للعادات أو الوظائف.

Ex. Egrets eat insects.

أبو قردان يأكل الحشرات.

Present Continuous (المضارع المستمر)

نستخدمه لما يحدث الآن.

Ex. The egret is catching insects now.

أبو قردان يصطاد الحشرات الآن.

5 Organize your ideas رتب أفكارك

اكتب في 3 خطوات:

- ١- ابدأ بما تراه (طائر في الحقل) ← ٢- صف عمله (يصطاد الحشرات) ← ٣- اختتم برأيك (حيوان مفيد وجميل)

Ex. I see a white egret in the field. It is catching insects. I think it is a helpful bird.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The speaker is watching a wildlife documentary.	☐	☐
2. Egrets have short legs.	☐	☐
3. The egret uses its sharp beak to catch insects.	☐	☐
4. Egrets help farmers by eating rice plants.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The egret is a kind of _____.
 a farmers b insects c birds d chemicals
- A _____ tells the story in the documentary.
 a farmer b narrator c buffalo d insect
- The egret uses its sharp _____ to catch insects.
 a feathers b back c beak d screen
- Hoppers are _____ that eat rice plants.
 a birds b insects c farmers d chemicals
- Rice plants are a kind of _____.
 a crops b wildlife c feathers d control
- The egret moves _____ when it catches insects.
 a single b bad c quickly d good
- The egret works _____ water buffaloes in the fields.
 a in b alongside c because d of
- Farmers use fewer _____ because of egrets.
 a feathers b screens c chemicals d backs
- The egret can eat _____ of insects in a single day.
 a single b easy c hundreds d tall
- The egret's white _____ make it easy to see.
 a crops b bones c feathers d chemicals

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sharp - egrets - feathers - hoppers - insects

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that ① help farmers by eating ② that harm crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing in a field. Suddenly, the egret raids quickly with its ③ beak. It is catching ④ that eat the rice plants. These birds often work alongside water buffaloes in the fields.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that bees help farmers by pollinating (تلقيح) flowers and making honey. On the screen, a bee is flying from one flower to another. Suddenly, it lands carefully on a bright yellow flower. The bee collects nectar (رحيق) and pollen (حبوب اللقاح), which helps the plants grow. Bees work together in hives (خلايا) and communicate with each other through dances. Farmers are happy because bees help crops grow naturally, and this makes the food healthier for people to eat.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Bees help farmers by

- ☐ a making wool ☐ b pollinating flowers ☐ c catching insects
☐ d flying over the water

2. Bees collect from flowers.

- ☐ a nectar and pollen ☐ b rice plants ☐ c flies ☐ d chemicals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the text about?

.....

4. How do bees help farmers grow crops?

.....

5. Why are bees useful?

.....

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. white - standing - a field - is - egret - in - The.

2. raids - with - The - beak - sharp - egret - its.

3. animal - on - There - my - are - helpers - farm.

4. control - provide - insect - Egrets - natural.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's your favorite animal helper

2. egrets have amazing white feathers

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Helpful Farm Birds

egrets - insects - chemicals

Review

on Unit 4

Key vocabulary



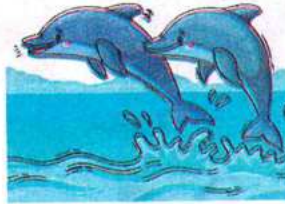
police dogs

الكلاب البوليسية



guide dogs

كلاب الارشاد / التوجيه



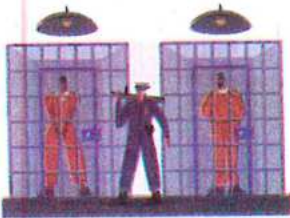
dolphins

الدلافين



horses

خيول



criminals

مجرمون



water buffalo

جاموسة المياه



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



falcon

صقر



gecko

أبو بريص



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران



crops

محاصيل



loads

احمال



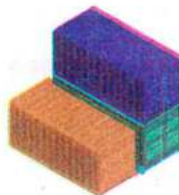
ripe

ناضج



routes

مسارات



containers

حاويات



plough

محراث

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!



cows

بقر



sheep

اغنام



guard dogs

كلاب حراسة



field

حقل



sweater

سترة



barn

حظيرة



grain

حبوب / غلال



carts

عربات كارو



egret

طائر ابو قردان



beak

منقار



hoppers

جراد



insect

حشرة

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Simple vs. Present Continuous

المضارع البسيط مقابل المضارع المستمر

A Present Simple المضارع البسيط

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم **Present Simple** للتعبير عن الحقائق، العادات، والوظائف.

Ex: A falcon **hunts** small animals.

2 Affirmative الاثبات

- في حالة الاثبات يتكون من:

I / You / We / They + اسم جمع + **(inf.)** مصدر الفعل
He / She / It + اسم مفرد + **(inf.)** + s, es, ies مصدر الفعل

Ex: Geckos **eat** insects.

3 Negative النفي

I / You / We / They + اسم جمع + **do not (don't) + (inf.)** مصدر الفعل
He / She / It + اسم مفرد + **does not (doesn't) + (inf.)** مصدر الفعل

Ex: Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

4 Question السؤال

- في حالة السؤال بهل ...؟

Do + I / you / we / they + **(inf.)** مصدر الفعل؟
Does + he / she / it + **(inf.)** مصدر الفعل؟

Ex: Does a gecko **eat** insects? - Yes, it **does**. / No, it **doesn't**.
اجابة مثبتة / اجابة منفية

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

every day
كل يومalways
دائماusually
عادةoften
غالباon Mondays
كل يوم اثنين

B Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم **Present Continuous** للأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو في هذه اللحظة.**Ex:** Look! The falcon **is flying** over the field.

2 Affirmative الإثبات

I + **am** + (V + ing)He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is** + (V + ing)You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are** + (V + ing)**Ex:** The donkey **is carrying** a heavy load now.

3 Negative النفي

I + **am not** ('m not) + (V + ing)He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is not** (isn't) + (V + ing)You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are not** (aren't) + (V + ing)**Ex:** The pigeons **aren't flying** at the moment.

4 Question السؤال

- في حالة السؤال بهل....؟

Am + I + (V + ing)?**Is** + he / she / it + (V + ing)?**Are** + you / we / they + (V + ing)?**Ex:** **Is** the falcon **hunting**? - Yes, it is. إجابة مثبتة - No, it isn't. إجابة منفية

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

now
الآنright now
في الحالat the moment
في هذه اللحظةtoday
اليومLook!
أنظر!Listen!
أستمع!



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Police dogs

Police dogs are very brave and smart. They help officers find lost people and catch criminals. With their strong noses, they can smell things from far away. Police dogs are trained carefully to follow commands and protect people.

2

Lesson 2

Animal helpers

Many animals help people in different ways. Water buffaloes pull ploughs on farms. Donkeys carry crops and supplies. Falcons hunt pests. Pigeons deliver messages. Geckos eat insects, and scarab beetles work in the soil. These animals make life better.

3

Lesson 3

Farm friends

Many animals help people every day. Cows give milk, and sheep provides wool. Dogs guard the animals. Cats catch mice. Horses pull carts, and donkeys carry heavy loads. Farmers treat them kindly, and the animals make life easier.

4

Lesson 4

Helpful Farm Birds

In rice fields, egrets help farmers. Sometimes, they stand on buffaloes' backs to spot insects more easily. They catch harmful hoppers because of protecting the crops and reducing the need for chemicals. Thanks to these birds, the harvest becomes healthier fields.

5

Al-Azhar Test

Amazing helpers

Donkeys, buffaloes, cows, sheep, and horses are very amazing helpful animals. Donkeys help people by carrying heavy things from one place to another. Cows give us milk and help in farming, and sheep give us wool. Horses help people to pull carts around the farm.

6

Test on Unit 4

A Visit to My Grandfather's Farm

Last weekend, I visited my grandfather's farm. The farm is very large and full of animal helpers. I saw cows, chickens, and even a horse. My grandfather showed me how to feed the animals and collect fresh eggs from chickens. The air was fresh, and the land was green. I helped my grandfather plant some vegetables in the garden. I love spending time on the farm because it makes me feel calm and happy.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. I went to the farm last
☐ a year ☐ b weekend ☐ c month
2. The was standing on buffalo's back.
☐ a falcon ☐ b gecko ☐ c egret
3. The dogs the sheep carefully.
☐ a guarded ☐ b ate ☐ c pulled

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل:

buffaloes - egret - loads - dogs

Teacher : Can you think of any animals that help people?

Student : Yes, guide ① help blind people.

Teacher : That's right! What other animals help farmers?

Student : Water ② plough through fields.

Teacher : Can birds help farmers, too ?

Student : Yes, the ③ eats insects that harm crops.

Teacher : That's right. Donkeys also help carry ④

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Look! The pigeon a message right now.
☐ a carries ☐ b is carrying ☐ c carried ☐ d was carrying
2. A gecko flies every evening.
☐ a eat ☐ b is eating ☐ c are eating ☐ d eats
3. The farmer is in the field the sheep.
☐ a watching over ☐ b giving up ☐ c slowing down ☐ d getting up
4. My grandmother knitted me a warm for the winter.
☐ a book ☐ b sweater ☐ c pen ☐ d bike

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. I is playing the piano now. (-----)
2. She watch TV every night. (-----)
3. Look! It's rains outside. (-----)
4. The egret look beautiful with its feathers. (-----)

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are many jobs in the animal kingdom. For example, on the farm each animal has an important job. Cows give us milk for drinking and making cheese. We take wool from sheep to make sweaters and blankets. We get fresh eggs from chickens. Cats are useful for eating mice from the fields. So we should be kind to these animals because they help us in many ways.

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. We get milk from chickens.	☐	☐
2. Cats can catch mice and eat them.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. Cows give us -----

☐ a eggs

☐ b milk

☐ c wool

☐ d mice

4. We should be ----- to animals which help us.

☐ a kind

☐ b angry

☐ c worried

☐ d strong

5. We can make ----- from the wool of the sheep.

☐ a cheese

☐ b blankets

☐ c meat

☐ d loads

6 Write a paragraph of about 4 sentences about:

اكتب فقرة من 4 جمل عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Amazing helpers

donkeys - cows - sheep - horses

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Police dogs help find criminals.

T F

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

2. Dolphins live on land.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

3. Guide dogs help blind people.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

4. Horses can pull the carts.

☐	☐
--------------------------	--------------------------

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. help people feel calm and happy.

a Lions

b Tigers

c Crocodiles

d Dolphins

2. Donkeys things every day.

a carried

b carrying

c carries

d carry

3. A: Does a gecko eat insects ? B: Yes, it

a does

b did

c don't

d doesn't

4. A is a person who grows food and raises animals.

a vet

b carpenter

c teacher

d farmer

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

safe - dogs - sheep - cow - harm

On the farm, there are many animal helpers. The ① gives us milk every day, and the ② provide wool for warm clothes. To keep the animals safe, the guard ③ watch over the farm at night. They help protect the cows and sheep from any danger, making sure everyone stays ④

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Amazing animals come in many shapes and sizes. The water buffalo is strong and helps farmers with their work. The donkey is known for being hard working. Pigeons are smart birds that can carry notes and letters between different places. The falcon is known as a skilled hunter. A gecko is a small lizard that can climb walls easily. The scarab beetle is a fascinating insect that breaks down waste and makes soil better for plants. All these animals, insects and lizards play an important role in our life.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. A / An _____ is a small lizard that can climb walls easily.
☐ a gecko ☐ b hen ☐ c duck ☐ d eagle
2. The water buffalo is strong and helps _____ with their work.
☐ a teachers ☐ b doctors ☐ c farmers ☐ d carpenters

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name animal helpers that are in the text. _____
4. What can pigeons do? _____
5. What is the falcon known for? _____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Look, I am _____ (try) to help you. اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:
2. We _____ (got) up at seven o'clock every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. wool - from - We - sheep - get. ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:
2. guide - How - help - do - blind - dogs - people? _____

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I don t go to school on Friday _____
2. are you playing football now _____

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (40) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

A Visit to My Grandfather's Farm

cows - horse - vegetables

Our Solar System نظامنا الشمسي

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Explain their choices in a discussion about which planet is their favorite.
يشرح الطلاب اختياراتهم في مناقشة حول أي كوكب هو المفضل لديهم.
- Answer questions based on visual information, such as pictures of space or planets.
يجيب الطلاب عن أسئلة تعتمد على المعلومات البصرية، مثل صور الفضاء أو الكواكب.
- Present their work to the class.
يقدم الطلاب عملهم أمام الفصل.

Reading:

- List key facts from an article.
يسرد الطلاب الحقائق الأساسية في مقال.
- Explain the meaning of compound words within a text.
يشرح الطلاب معنى الكلمات المركبة داخل النص.
- Distinguish between adjectives and other parts of speech in a story.
يميز الطلاب بين الصفات وأجزاء الكلام الأخرى في القصة.
- Determine the moral or lesson of a story.
يحدد الطلاب المغزى أو الدرس الأخلاقي من القصة.

Listening:

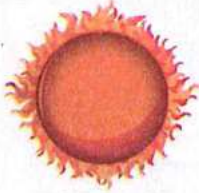
- Recall keywords and names of planets from a dialog about the solar system.
يتذكر الطلاب الكلمات الأساسية وأسماء الكواكب من حوار عن النظام الشمسي.
- Identify the main ideas of a conversation about space exploration.
يحدد الطلاب الأفكار الرئيسية عن محادثة حول استكشاف الفضاء.
- Use information from a listening passage to determine the order of events.
يستخدم الطلاب المعلومات من مقطع استماع لتحديد ترتيب الأحداث.

Writing:

- Use correct comparative and superlative forms of adjectives in sentences.
يستخدم الطلاب صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل الصحيحة للصفات في الجمل.
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a space trip, applying adjectives to make their writing more interesting.
يكتب الطلاب فقرة وصفية عن رحلة إلى الفضاء ويستخدمون الصفات لجعل الكتابة أكثر تشويقاً.
- Design a brochure for a planet, incorporating a title, facts, and images.
يصمم الطلاب كتيب عن كوكب، يتضمن عنوان وحقائق وصور.

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



the Sun

الشمس



the Moon

القمر



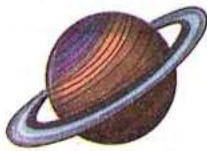
the solar system

النظام الشمسي



galaxy

المجرة



Saturn

كوكب زحل



Mars

كوكب المريخ



Mercury

كوكب عطارد



Jupiter

كوكب المشتري



Earth

كوكب الأرض



Uranus

كوكب اورانوس



Neptune

كوكب نبتون



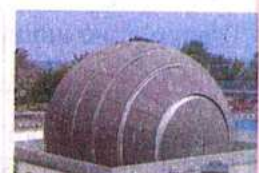
Venus

كوكب الزهرة



space museum

متحف الفضاء



planetarium

القبة السماوية

the Red Planet

الكوكب الأحمر

the Milky Way

مجرة درب التبانة



Other words

كلمات أخرى

guide
planets
stars
screen
iron-rich
inside

مرشد سياحي
كواكب
نجوم
شاشة
غني بالحديد
بالداخل

interesting
famous
exactly
shiny rings
exciting
better

شيق
مشهور
بالضبط
حلقات لامعة
مثير
افضل

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

talk about	يتحدث عن	the largest planet	أكبر كوكب
famous for	مشهور بـ	the smallest planet	أصغر كوكب
part of	جزء من	look at	ينظر إلى

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

talk	يتحدث
look	يبدو
name	يُسمى
call	يُطلق على / يسمي
explore	يستكشف

Past ماضٍ

talked
looked
named
called
explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

learn	يتعلم
see	يري
make	يجعل

Past ماضٍ

learned / learnt
saw
made

Definitions تعريفات

Mercury كوكب عطارد	the smallest planet	أصغر كوكب
Mars كوكب المريخ	the red planet	الكوكب الأحمر
Saturn كوكب زحل	a planet with rings	كوكب بحلقات
galaxy المجرة	a group of many stars	مجموعة من النجوم

Facts about the planets حقائق عن الكواكب

1 Mercury: عطارد

- It's the smallest planet in the solar system.

أصغر الكواكب في النظام الشمسي.

2 Venus: الزهرة

- It's the hottest planet in the solar system.

أكثر الكواكب سخونة في النظام الشمسي.

3 Earth: الأرض

- The only planet is known to have life. We live in it.

الكوكب الوحيد المعروف بوجود حياة. ونحن نعيش فيه.

Unit 5 Our Solar System

4 Mars: المريخ

- It's called the Red Planet because of iron in its soil.

يطلق عليه الكوكب الأحمر بسبب الحديد في تربته.

5 Jupiter: المشتري

- It's the biggest planet in the solar system.

أكبر الكواكب في النظام الشمسي.

6 Saturn: زحل

- It's famous for its beautiful rings.

مشهور بحلقاته الجميلة.

7 The Milky Way: درب التبانة

- It's the galaxy that contains our solar system.

هي مجرة تحتوي على نظامنا الشمسي.

- Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

مجرتنا تسمى درب التبانة.

Study the following

1 Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium!

أهلاً بكم جميعاً في القبة السماوية!

2 Today we will learn about the solar system.

اليوم سنتعلم عن النظام الشمسي.

3 Look at the big screen.

انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة.

4 I can see the Sun and the Moon.

استطع رؤية الشمس والقمر.

5 Can you name a big one?

هل تستطيع تسمية كوكب كبير؟

6 Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في النظام الشمسي.

7 And those shiny rings - are they around Saturn?

وتلك الحلقات اللامعة - هل هي حول زحل؟

8 Saturn is famous for its rings.

زحل مشهور بحلقاته.

9 Our galaxy is called the Milky Way.

مجرتنا تسمى درب التبانة.

10 The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

الشمس والقمر والكواكب تجعل الفضاء مثيراً للأستكشاف.

Listen and read:

استمع واقرأ:

Tape Script



استمع إلى النص:



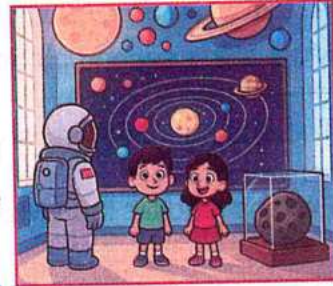
A Trip to the Planetarium رحلة إلى القبة السماوية

"At the **space museum**,⁽¹⁾ Amina, Omar, and a guide talk about planets and stars."

Guide : Welcome, everyone, to the planetarium! Today we will, learn about the solar system.

المرشد: أهلاً بكم جميعاً في القبة السماوية! اليوم سنتعلم عن النظام الشمسي.

Amina : Wow! Oh, look at the big screen. I can see the Sun and the Moon.



أمينة: واو! انظروا إلى الشاشة الكبيرة. أستطيع رؤية الشمس والقمر.

Guide : Mars is called the Red Planet because its **iron-rich soil**⁽²⁾ makes it look red.

المرشد: يُطلق على المريخ اسم الكوكب الأحمر لأن تربته الغنية بالحديد تجعله يبدو أحمر اللون.

Amina : Ohhh, that's interesting!

أمينة: أوووه، هذا مثير للاهتمام!

Omar : Yeah! I see the planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, and Mars.

عمر: نعم! أرى الكواكب: عطارد، الزهرة، الأرض والمريخ.

Guide : Good job! Those are the four small planets. Can you name a big one?

المرشد: أحسنت! هذه هي الكواكب الصغيرة. هل تستطيع تسمية كوكب كبير؟

Amina : Is it Jupiter?

أمينة: هل هو المشتري؟

Guide : Yes! Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.

المرشد: نعم، المشتري هو أكبر كوكب في النظام الشمسي.

Omar : And those **shiny rings**,⁽³⁾ - are they around Saturn?

عمر: وتلك الحلقات اللمعة هل هي حول زحل؟

Guide : Exactly! Saturn is famous for its rings.

المرشد: بالضبط! زحل مشهور بحلقاته.

Amina : Wow, so many stars!

أمينة: واو، كم يوجد من نجوم!

Guide : Yes, they are part of a **galaxy**.⁽⁴⁾ Our galaxy is called the **Milky Way**.⁽⁵⁾

المرشد: نعم، إنها جزء من مجرة. مجرتنا تسمى درب التبانة.

Omar : So the solar system is inside it?

عمر: إذا النظام الشمسي موجود داخلها؟

Guide : Exactly! The Sun, Moon, and planets make space exciting to explore.

المرشد: بالضبط! الشمس، والقمر والكواكب تجعل الفضاء مثيراً للاستكشاف.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- متحف الفضاء
- ٢- تربته الغنية
- ٣- حلقات لامعة
- ٤- مجرة
- ٥- درب التبانة

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Mars is the second planet from the sun.	☐	☐
2. There is iron on Mars' soil.	☐	☐
3. Earth is smaller than Mars.	☐	☐
4. The weather on Mars is very cold.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Moon - planet - Way - galaxy - inside

I went to the library yesterday. I found an amazing book about space and the planets. I learnt new information about each ¹ We live on the planet Earth. There is the Milky ² It's a ³ that has a lot of stars and all the planets are ⁴ it.

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

The solar system has eight planets that move around the sun. They are; Mars, Earth, Venus, Mercury, Saturn, Jupiter, Uranus and Neptune. Each planet is different from other planets. For example, Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn is famous for its rings. Mars has iron-rich soil, so it's called the Red Planet. Neptune is cold and windy with storms that move faster than any on Earth. When we study these planets, we learn more about space, stars and even our own world.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. is the largest planet.

☐ a Mars

☐ b Jupiter

☐ c Saturn

☐ d Earth

2. Each planet is from other planets.

a far

b same

c different

d near

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the text about?

.....

4. What's Saturn famous for?

.....

5. Why is Mars called the Red Planet?

.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. big - Look - at - screen - the.

2. planets - Those - four - small - are - the.

3. rings - Saturn - its - famous - is - for.

4. is - Mars - Red - called - the - Planet.

5. is - the solar - The guide - about - talking - system.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. which planet is your favorite

2. our galaxy is called the Milky Way

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Our visit to the planetarium

planets - screen - amazing

.....
.....
.....
.....

★ From Egypt to the Galaxy (Sara Sabry: Reaching for the Stars)

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



female	أنثى	drier	أجف
astronaut	رائد فضاء	farther	أبعد
inspire	يُلهم	describe	يصف
compared	قارن	imagine	يتخيل
the universe	الكون	realize	يدرك

Other words كلمات أخرى

the first Arab	أول عرب	dreams	أحلام
engineer	مهندس	rings	حلقات
nothing	لا شيء	seeing	رؤية
impossible	مستحيل	young people	الشباب

Expressions, prepositions and phrases تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

travel into	يسافر في	compared to	مقارنة بـ
in her work	في عملها	nothing is impossible	لا شيء مستحيل

Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

travel	يسافر
inspire	يُلهم
compare	يقارن
describe	يصف
realize	يدرك
imagine	يتخيل
believe	يعتقد
study	يدرس
follow	يتبع

Past ماضٍ

traveled
inspired
compared
described
realized
imagined
believed
studied
followed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

become	يصبح
make	يجعل
say	يقول
have / has	يملك / لديه

Past ماضٍ

became
made
said
had

Study the following

- 1 Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. سارة صبري أول رائدة فضاء مصرية.
- 2 She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space. أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء.
- 3 I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams. أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر لمتابعة أحلامهم.
- 4 In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. في عملها درست المجموعة الشمسية والكواكب.
- 5 Mercury is smaller than Earth. عطارد أصغر من الأرض.
- 6 Mars is drier than Earth. المريخ أجف من الأرض.
- 7 Saturn has famous rings. زحل لديه حلقات جميلة.
- 8 The galaxy is bigger than we imagine. المجرة أكبر مما نتخيل.

Read the following article: اقرأ المقالة الآتية:

استمع إلى النص:



Egypt's First Astronaut

أول رائدة فضاء مصرية

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into space in 2022. Sara says, "I want to inspire young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and **believe**⁽¹⁾ that nothing is impossible."

In her work, she studied the solar system and the planets. She **explains**⁽²⁾:

Mercury is smaller than Earth. Venus is hotter than Earth. Mars is drier than Earth, while Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn has beautiful rings, and Uranus and Neptune are colder and **farther away**⁽³⁾.

Sara describes looking at the Sun, the Moon, and the stars in our galaxy. "The galaxy is bigger than we **imagine**⁽⁴⁾," she says. Seeing Earth from space made her **realize**⁽⁵⁾ how small our planet is **compared**⁽⁶⁾ to the universe.



سارة صبري أول رائدة فضاء مصرية. أصبحت أول مهندسة عربية تسافر إلى الفضاء في عام ٢٠٢٢. تقول

سارة: "أريد أن ألهم الشباب في مصر لمتابعة أحلامهم والأيمان بأنه لا شيء مستحيل."

في عملها، درست النظام الشمسي والكواكب. تشرح: عطارد أصغر من الأرض، بينما المشتري هو أكبر الكواكب والمريخ أجف من الأرض، وزحل لديه حلقات جميلة، وأورانوس ونبتون أكثر برودة وأبعد.

تصف سارة النظر إلى الشمس والقمر والنجوم في مجرتنا. تقول: "المجرة أكبر مما نتخيل." رؤية الأرض من الفضاء جعلتها تدرك مدى صغر كوكبنا مقارنة بالكون.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- يعتقد
- ٢- تشرح
- ٣- أبعد من ذلك
- ٤- نتخيل
- ٥- تدرك
- ٦- مقارنة بـ

Language in use

قواعد لغوية

Comparative Form

صيغة المقارنة

تستخدم صيغة المقارنة عند مقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين.

1 Comparative form (short adjectives)

صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة

الصفات القصيرة تحتوي علي حرف متحرك واحد مثل، short - tall - small - young - big - pretty

وتتكون من:

short adjective + er + than

short → shorter than

tall → taller than

small → smaller than

young → younger than

Ex: Mercury is smaller than Earth.

ملاحظات عند المقارنة

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (r) فقط،

nice → nicer than

large → larger than

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier)،

heavy → heavier than

pretty → prettier than

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضاعف الحرف الأخير للصفة،

big → bigger than

thin → thinner than

2 Comparative form (long adjectives)

صيغة المقارنة للصفات الطويلة

الصفات الطويلة تحتوي علي اكثر من حرف متحرك مثل، beautiful - exciting - interesting - colorful

وتتكون من:

more أكثر } + long adjective + than
less أقل }

Ex: Venus is more beautiful than Earth.

Superlative Form صيغة التفضيل العليا

تستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا عند مقارنة شخص أو شيء أو حيوان واحد مع مجموعته :

1 Superlative form (short adjectives) صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة

صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة التي تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد وتتكون من :

the + short adjective + est

short → the **shortest**

tall → the **tallest**

small → the **smallest**

young → the **youngest**

Ex: The Sun is **the brightest** star in the solar system.

ملاحظات عند صيغة التفضيل العليا :

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (st) فقط :

nice → the **nicest**

large → the **largest**

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest) :

heavy → the **heaviest**

pretty → the **prettiest**

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضع الحرف الأخير للصفة :

big → the **biggest**

thin → the **thinnest**

2 Superlative form (long adjectives) صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات الطويلة

صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات الطويلة التي تحتوي على أكثر من حرف متحرك واحد وتتكون من :

the most
the least } + long adjective

Ex: Jupiter is **the most colorful** planet in the solar system.

هناك صفات شاذة :

• good جيد → **better than** أفضل من → **the best** الأفضل

• bad سيئ → **worse than** أسوأ من → **the worst** الأسوأ

• far بعيد → **farther than** أبعد من → **the farthest** الأبعد

Checkup Exercises ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Solar power is _____ than fuel in long space missions. SB
 a useful b most usefully c the most useful d more useful
2. Mars is _____ than Mercury. SB
 a cold b colder c coldest d more cold
3. Hisham is taller _____ his sister.
 a then b than c that d the
4. Our school is _____ than our house.
 a big b bigger c biggest d more big
5. The Sun is _____ star in our solar system. SB
 a bright b brighter c the brightest d more bright
6. My uncle is _____ than my dad.
 a older b oldest c old d very old
7. Mars is _____ planet for scientists to explore. SB
 a interesting b more interesting
 c the most interesting d most interestingly
8. Venus is the _____ planet in the sky.
 a more beautiful b most beautiful c beautiful d less beautiful

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mars is _____ (dry) than Earth.
2. August is _____ (hot) than February.
3. Sara is _____ (careful) than her brother. SB
4. Mercury is _____ (smallest) than Earth.
5. English is _____ (useful) than many other languages. SB
6. My grandpa is the _____ (old) person in my family.
7. The galaxy is bigger _____ (then) we imagine.
8. Neptune is _____ (distant) planet from the sun. SB
9. This story is the _____ (more) exciting one.

Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The planets in the solar system are the same.	☐	☐
2. Saturn is famous for its rings.	☐	☐
3. Uranus and Neptune are hotter.	☐	☐
4. Jupiter is larger than Mercury.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We live on
 a Mars b Saturn c Jupiter d Earth
- I understood the lesson when my teacher it.
 a explained b learnt c inspired d realized
- Mercury is smaller Earth. SB
 a as b so c the d than
- Jupiter is the planet in the solar system.
 a larger b largest c large d very large
- Sara Sabry wanted to young people to follow their dreams.
 a inspire b become c study d travel
- Sara Sabry is the First Arab to travel into space.
 a nurse b astronaut c pilot d doctor
- Mars is than Earth. SB
 a driest b drier c dry d more dry
- Stories are interesting than books.
 a most b more c much d many
- Elephants are the animals in the zoo.
 a bigger b more big c biggest d big
- This bread is the delicious in the bakery.
 a more b most c much d many

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Earth - imagine - dream - impossible - system

Astronauts are clever people who explore the space. They like studying the solar
 ① ----- and the planets. They learn a lot of things in space. They believe
 nothing is ② ----- . They bring a lot of information about the galaxy and the
 ③ ----- we live in. When I grow up, my ④ ----- is to become an astronaut.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mars is ----- (**dry**) than Earth.
2. Omar is the ----- (**tall**) boy in the class. SB
3. The ship is ----- (**large**) than the boat.
4. Hisham is ----- (**young**) than his brother.
5. Mercury is ----- (**small**) than Earth.
6. My sister is the ----- (**beautiful**) girl in the party. SB
7. I think reading books is ----- (**boring**) than watching TV.
8. The plane is faster ----- (**than**) a train.
9. The cake is the ----- (**sweet**) in the bakery. SB
10. This movie is ----- (**exciting**) than the one we watched yesterday. SB

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. has - **Saturn** - rings - beautiful. -----
2. believed - nothing - **Sara** - impossible - that - is. -----
3. is - **The** - we - galaxy - bigger - imagine - than. -----
4. female - Egyptian - the first - **She's** - astronaut. -----

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. venus is hotter than Earth -----
2. who's the first Arab female engineer -----

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



classmates
messy
teamwork

زملاء الفصل
فوضى
فريق عمل

shook
sighed
took

هز رأسه
تنهد
استغرقت



Other words

كلمات أخرى

science class
quietly
worried
facts
together

حصة العلوم
بهدهو
قلق
حقائق
معاً

easier
better
project
homework chart
bright

أسهل
أفضل
مشروع
رسم الواجب المنزلي
ساطع / لامع



Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعبيرات وحروف جر وعبارات

take **too** long
about the planets
look worried

تأخذ وقت طويل
عن الكواكب
يبدو قلقاً

after school
working **together**
Great teamwork!

بعد المدرسة
العمل معاً
عمل جماعي رائع!



Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

add يضيف
finish ينتهي
smile يتسم
ask يسأل
want يريد
sigh يتنهد
color يلون

Past ماضٍ

added
finished
smiled
asked
wanted
sighed
colored

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

make يعمل
shake يهز رأسه
draw يرسم
take يستغرق
sit يجلس
write يكتب
learn يتعلم

Past ماضٍ

made
shook
drew
took
sat
wrote
learned / learnt

Definitions تعريفات

poster	إعلان	a big paper with pictures and writing	ورقة كبيرة بها صور وكتابة
color pencils	أقلام ألوان	tools for drawing and coloring	أدوات للرسم والتلوين
messy	فوضى	not clean or not neat	ليس نظيف أو مرتب
rings	حلقات	Thin circles around Saturn	دوائر رفيعة حول زحل
teamwork	فريق عمل	working together to finish something	العمل معاً لإنهاء شيئاً ما

Study the following

1 Nada and Adam were classmates in science class.

كانت ندى وأدم زميلين في حصة العلوم.

2 Adam wanted to do everything himself.

أراد آدم أن يقوم بكل شيء بنفسه.

3 But the work took too long.

لكن العمل استغرق وقتاً طويلاً.

4 The sunlight colors looked messy.

ألوان الشمس بدت فوضوية

5 Nada sat quietly with her color pencils.

جلست ندى بهدوء بأقلام التلوين الخاصة بها.

6 The homework chart still wasn't finished.

لم يكن رسم الواجب قد اكتمل بعد.

7 The planet poster was bright and clear.

اصبح ملصق الكواكب مشرقاً و واضحاً.

8 They learned something bigger than planets.

لقد تعلموا شيئاً أكبر من الكواكب.

9 Working together makes the job easier - and better.

العمل معاً يجعل المهمة أسهل وأفضل.



Read the following article: اقرأ المقالة الآتية:

استمع إلى النص:

Nada and Adam were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about the planets.

كانت ندى وآدم زميلين في حصة العلوم. طلبت منهما معلمتهما أن يصنعا ملصقاً للفصل عن الكواكب.

At first, Adam wanted to do everything himself. He **drew**⁽¹⁾ Mercury, Venus, and Earth. But the work **took** too long, and the sunlight colors looked **messy**⁽²⁾. Nada sat quietly with her color pencils.



في البداية، أراد آدم أن يقوم بكل شيء بنفسه. رسم عطارد والزهرة والأرض. لكن العمل استغرق وقتاً طويلاً، وألوان الشمس بدت فوضوية. جلست ندى بهدوء ممسكة بأقلام التلوين الخاصة بها.

"Can I help?" Nada asked.

سألت ندى: "هل أساعدك؟"

Adam **shook his head**⁽³⁾. "No, I want it my way."

هز آدم رأسه قائلاً: "لا. أريد القيام بذلك بطريقتي."

The next day, the homework chart still wasn't finished. The teacher looked worried. Adam **sighed**⁽⁴⁾. "Okay, Nada, you can help."

في اليوم التالي، لم يكن جدول الواجب المنزلي قد اكتمل بعد. كانت المعلمة قلقة. تنهد آدم وقال: "حسنًا يا ندى، يمكنك المساعدة."

Together, they worked after school. Nada **colored**⁽⁵⁾ Mars red and added rings to Saturn. Adam wrote **facts**⁽⁶⁾: "Jupiter is the largest planet. Neptune is the farthest."

Arabic Meaning

- ١- رسم
- ٢- فوضى
- ٣- هز رأسه
- ٤- تنهد
- ٥- لونت
- ٦- حقائق
- ٧- ابتسموا

معاً عملاً بعد المدرسة. قامت ندى بتلوين المريخ باللون الأحمر وأضافت حلقات لزحل. وكتب آدم الحقائق: "المشتري هو أكبر كوكب. نبتون هو الأبعد."

When they finished, the planet poster was bright and clear. The teacher smiled. "Great **teamwork**!" عندما انتهيا، أصبح ملصق الكواكب واضحاً وجميلاً. ابتسمت المعلمة قائلة: "عمل رائع كفريق!" Nada and Adam **smiled**⁽⁷⁾ too. They learned something bigger than planets. Working together makes the job easier-and better.

ابتسمت ندى وآدم أيضاً: لقد تعلّما شيئاً أهم من الكواكب: العمل معاً يجعل المهمة أسهل - وأفضل.

Word Building Skills



Compound words الكلمات المركبة

هي كلمات تتكون عندما ندمج كلمتين صغيرتين لتكوين كلمة جديدة.

⇒ For example:

class room = classroom

غرفة فصل

sun light = sunlight

ضوء الشمس

foot ball = football

كرة القدم

star fish = starfish

سمكة البحر

tooth brush = toothbrush

فرشاة أسنان

bed room = bedroom

غرفة نوم

أحياناً تكتب الكلمات المركبة كلمة واحدة مثل: classroom

وأحياناً تكتب كلمتين مثل: ice cream

1 Pick a word from the box, and add it to a word below to make a compound word:

اختر كلمة من القائمة واضفها إلى الكلمة بالأسفل لتكوين كلمة مركبة:

book - brush - fish - box - room

1. star + _____ = _____

2. note + _____ = _____

3. lunch + _____ = _____

4. tooth + _____ = _____

5. bed + _____ = _____



2 Read the text and circle the compound words:

اقرأ النص ثم ضع دائرة على الكلمات المركبة:

Nada and Adam wanted to finish their schoolwork on time. They used teamwork to read a storybook and share ideas. Adam drew a picture on the blackboard while Nada wrote notes in her notebook. Together, they showed that friendship and hard work can solve problems.

Activities

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Omar is my best _____ at school.
 a neighbor b classmate c father d uncle
- I used my color _____ to color my poster.
 a books b pencils c bags d pens
- There are _____ around Saturn.
 a rings b colors c dusts d lights
- Working together makes the job _____.
 a longer b easier c worse d drier
- A _____ is working together to finish something.
 a teamwork b poster c fact d classmate
- Adam's work _____ a long time.
 a made b shook c sighed d took
- Gamal _____ after finishing all his homework.
 a felt b looked c sighed d made

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

classmates – teamwork – facts – color – worried

Yesterday, our science teacher asked us to make a classroom poster about the planets. My ① _____ shared together to make the poster. I brought my ② _____ pencils and drew the pictures of the planets. My friend Adel wrote ③ _____ about each planet. My friend Tarek colored the planets. The teacher smiled and said, "Great ④ _____"

3 Read the text and answer the following questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

Teamwork means working together with others to make a good work. When children work as a team, they help each other and share ideas. Teamwork makes work easier, better and more fun. Everyone in the team has a role to play. When someone in the team has a problem, everyone in the team tries to help them. Teamwork teaches children to be kind and helpful. **It** makes any work take a short time.

Unit 5 Our Solar System

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. - Teamwork makes work
a better **b** longer **c** difficult **d** farther
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a everyone **b** teamwork **c** work **d** problem

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does teamwork mean?
.....
4. Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....
5. What does teamwork teach children?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. planet - was - clear - The - poster - bright - and.
2. sat - quietly - Nada - with - pencils - color - her.
3. wasn't - The - chart - homework - still - finished.
4. school - worked - The - together - classmates - after.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's your project about
2. friendship can solve problems

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

Working in a teamwork

poster – classmates – together

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



spaceship سفينة فضاء



rocket صاروخ



swing أرجوحة



slide زحليقة



star-ball rolling

كرة نجمية صغيرة



alien

كائن فضائي



soft clouds

سحب ناعمة



football

كرة القدم

landed
shaped like
spin
band of stars
asteroids

هبطت
شكله يشبه
تدور
شريط من النجوم
الكويكبات

glowing
once around
edge
comets
billion

متوهج
دورة واحدة
حافة
مذنبات
مليار

Other words

كلمات أخرى

dream
inside
outside
small lights
bright colors

حلم
بالداخل
في الخارج
أضواء صغيرة
ألوان زاهية

loud noise
round windows
the dark sky
playground
lamp

صوت عال
نوافذ دائرية
السماء المظلمة
ملعب
مصباح

Expressions, prepositions and phrases

تعابير وحروف جر وعبارات

in the sky
on the ground
smile at
wake up
into the dark sky

في السماء
على الأرض
يتسم إلى
يستيقظ
داخل السماء المظلمة

made of light
with big eyes
like
go up

مصنوعة من الضوء
بعيون كبيرة
مثل
يرتفع لأعلى

Conjugation of verbs

تصريفات الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

land	يهبط
look like	يشبه
laugh	يضحك
smile	يتسّم
remember	يتذكر

Past ماضٍ

landed
looked like
laughed
smiled
remembered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

have/ has	لديه / يمتلك
go up	يصعد لأعلى
see	يرى
show	يبين / يوضح

Past ماضٍ

had
went up
saw
showed

Study the following

1 Last night I had a dream.

في الليلة الماضية، رأيت حلمًا.

2 I was inside a big, shiny spaceship with round windows.

كنت داخل مركبة فضائية كبيرة ولامعة ذات نوافذ مستديرة.

3 The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky.

أحدث الصاروخ صوتًا عاليًا بينما كان يرتفع في السماء المظلمة.

4 I saw a fun playground in space.

رأيت ملعبًا ممتعًا في الفضاء.

5 The swings were made of light and the slide looked so colorful.

كانت الأرجوحات مصنوعة من الضوء وكانت الزحليقة تبدو ملونة جدًا.

6 There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground.

كان هناك أيضًا كرة نجمية مستديرة تتدحرج على الأرض.

7 Then, a kind alien with big eyes smiled at me.

ثم ابتسم لي كائن فضائي لطيف ذو عيون كبيرة.

8 He showed me his planet.

أراني كوكبه.

9 The houses were like soft clouds.

كانت البيوت مثل سحب ناعمة.

10 The children played football with the glowing star-ball.

وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بالكرة النجمية المتوهجة.

11 When I woke up, I still remembered the bright color in space.

عندما استيقظت مازلت أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.

Read the text

أقرأ القصة:

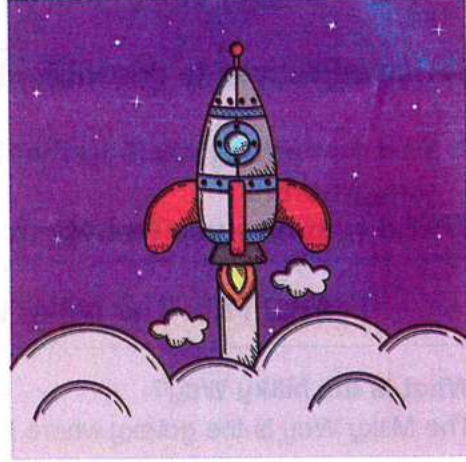
استمع إلى النص:



رحلتي في مركبة فضائية *My Trip in a Spaceship*

Last night, I had a dream.⁽¹⁾ I was inside a big, shiny **spaceship**⁽²⁾ with round windows. The rocket made a loud noise as it went up into the dark sky. Outside, the bright Moon looked **like**⁽³⁾ a lamp, and the stars were like small lights in the sky.

في الليلة الماضية، رأيت حلمًا. كنت داخل مركبة فضائية كبيرة ولامعة ذات نوافذ مستديرة. أصدر الصاروخ صوتًا عاليًا بينما كان يرتفع في السماء المظلمة. في الخارج، كان القمر الساطع يبدو كالمصباح، والنجوم كانت تبدو مثل أضواء صغيرة في السماء.



When the spaceship **landed**⁽⁴⁾, I saw a fun playground in space. The **swings**⁽⁵⁾ were made of light, and the slide looked so colorful. There was even a round star-ball rolling on the ground.

كانت الأرجوحات مصنوعة من الضوء، وكانت الزحليقة تبدو ملونة جدًا، فهناك أيضًا كرة نجمية مستديرة تتدحرج على الأرض.

Then, a kind **alien**⁽⁶⁾ with big eyes smiled at me. He showed me his planet. The houses were like soft clouds, and the children played football with the glowing star-ball. We **laughed**⁽⁷⁾ and played together.

ثم ابتسم لي كائن فضائي لطيف ذو عيين كبيرتين وأراني كوكبه. كانت البيوت تبدو مثل سحب ناعمة،

وكان الأطفال يلعبون كرة القدم بالكرة النجمية المتوهجة المضئنة ضحكنا ولعبنا معًا.

It was a happy and fun place. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.

كان مكانًا سعيدًا وممتعًا. وعندما استيقظت ما زلت أتذكر الألوان الزاهية في الفضاء.

Arabic Meaning

- ١- حلم
- ٢- مركبة فضاء
- ٣- يشبه
- ٤- هبطت
- ٥- الأرجوحات
- ٦- كائن فضائي
- ٧- ضحك

Writing a descriptive paragraph



كتابة فقرة وصفية

عند كتابة فقرة وصفية تذكر أن:

- 1- start with where your story happens (in a spaceship, on a planet, on the moon):
١- ابدأ بمكان حدوث قصتك (في سفينة فضاء، علي كوكب، علي القمر).
- 2- Who is in your story (you, a friend, an astronaut, or an alien)
٢- من الموجود في قصتك (أنت، صديقك، رائد فضاء، أو كائن فضائي).
- 3- Use adjectives to describe what you see (big, bright, shiny, fun)
٣- استخدم الصفات لوصف ما تراه (كبير، ساطع، لامع، ممتع).
- 4- Add something exciting that happens (visiting a planet, finding a playground).
٤- أضف شيئاً مثيراً يحدث (زيارة كوكب، إيجاد ساحة لعب).
- 5- End with how you feel about your trip.
٥- أنهى حديثك بذكر مشاعرك تجاه رحلتك.

Fact File: The Milky Way Galaxy ملف الحقائق: مجرة درب التبانة

What is the Milky Way?

ما هي مجرة درب التبانة؟

The Milky Way is the galaxy where Earth and the Sun are.

درب التبانة هي المجرة التي يوجد بها الأرض والشمس.

It looks like a bright band of stars across the night sky.

تبدو كشريط ساطع من النجوم عبر سماء الليل.

It is shaped like a big circle that spins, full of stars, gas, and dust..

شكلها يشبه الدائرة الكبيرة التي تدور وملينة بالنجوم والغاز والأتربة.

What's Inside?

ماذا يوجد بداخلها؟

The Milky Way has over 200 billion stars! تحتوي مجرة درب التبانة على أكثر من ٢٠٠ مليار نجم!

It has planets, moons, and rocks like comets and asteroids.

تحتوي على كواكب وأقمار وصخور مثل المذنبات والكويكبات.

The Sun is one of the stars near the edge of our galaxy.

الشمس هي إحدى النجوم القريبة من حافة مجرتنا.

Where Are We?

أين نحن؟

Our solar system is part of the Milky Way.

نظامنا الشمسي هو جزء من مجرة درب التبانة.

We live on Earth, the third planet from the Sun.

نحن نعيش على الأرض، الكوكب الثالث من الشمس.

It takes the Sun about 230 million years to travel once around the Milky Way!

تستغرق الشمس حوالي ٢٣٠ مليون سنة لتكمل دورة واحدة حول مجرة درب التبانة.

Amazing Facts:

حقائق مذهلة:

The Milky Way is so huge that light takes about 100,000 years to cross it!

مجرة درب التبانة ضخمة جداً لدرجة أن الضوء يستغرق حوالي ١٠٠,٠٠٠ سنة لعبورها!

When you see stars in the night sky, you're looking at our galaxy.

عندما ترى النجوم في سماء الليل، فأنت تنظر إلى مجرتنا.

There may be other galaxies like the Milky Way in the universe - even bigger ones!

قد تكون هناك مجرات أخرى مثل درب التبانة في الكون - وحتى أكبر منها!



Activities

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. The solar system is in the Milky Way.	☐	☐
2. The Milky Way has a small numbers of stars.	☐	☐
3. The Sun is one of the many stars in the Milky Way.	☐	☐
4. The Milky Way helps scientists learn about the universe.	☐	☐

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

amazing - dreams - round - Astronauts - universe

A spaceship is a vehicle that travels into space. ① ride in spaceships to explore the stars and planets. The spaceships are big with ② windows. Traveling in a spaceship is ③ and help astronauts learn more about the space and the ④

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We live on Earth, it's the planet from the Sun.
 a third b fourth c second d first
- The Sun is one of the near the edge of our galaxy.
 a planets b stars c rocks d comets
- The rocket up into the dark sky,
 a woke b smiled c went d laughed
- In my dream, the kind alien me his planet in space.
 a played b landed c showed d traveled
- Our solar system is the Milky Way,
 a outside b under c apart of d in front of

Unit 5 Our Solar System

4 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. is - the third - Earth - planet - the Sun - from.

2. was - a fun - a happy - It - place - and.

3. soft - The - like - were - houses - clouds .

4. Moon - looked - The - bright - a lamp - like.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. how was your dream last night

2. the stars were very colorful

6 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه اخر الوحدة

Your trip in space

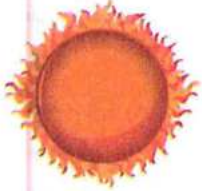
spaceship – planets – galaxy

Review

on Unit 5



Key vocabulary



the Sun

الشمس



the Moon

القمر



the solar system

النظام الشمسي



galaxy

المجرة



Saturn

كوكب زحل



Mars

كوكب المريخ



Mercury

كوكب عطارد



Jupiter

كوكب المشتري



Earth

كوكب الأرض



Uranus

كوكب اورانوس



Neptune

كوكب نبتون



Venus

كوكب الزهرة



space museum

متحف الفضاء



planetarium

القبة السماوية



spaceship سفينة فضاء



rocket صاروخ



swing أرجوحة



slide زحليقة



star-ball rolling

كرة نجمية صغيرة



alien

كائن فضائي



soft clouds

سحب ناعمة



football

كرة القدم

Unit 5 Our Solar System

the Red Planet	الكوكب الأحمر	the Milky Way	مجرة درب التبانة
female	أنثى	drier	أجف
astronaut	رائد فضاء	farther	أبعد
inspire	يلهم	describe	يصف
compared	قارن	imagine	يتخيل
the universe	الكون	realize	يدرك
classmates	زملاء الفصل	shook	هز رأسه
messy	فوضى	sighed	تنهد
teamwork	فريق عمل	took	استغرقت
landed	هبطت	glowing	متوهج
shaped like	شكله يشبه	once around	دورة واحدة
spin	تدور	edge	حافة
band of stars	شريط من النجوم	comets	مذنبات
asteroids	الكويكبات	billion	مليار

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Comparative Form

صيغة المقارنة

تستخدم صيغة المقارنة عند مقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين.

1 Comparative form (short adjectives) صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة

الصفات القصيرة تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد مثل، short - tall - small - young - big - pretty

وتتكون من:

short adjective + er + than

short → shorter than

tall → taller than

small → smaller than

young → younger than

Ex: Mars is colder than mercury

ملاحظات عند المقارنة

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (r) فقط:

nice → nicer than

large → larger than

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

heavy → heavier than

pretty → prettier than

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضاعف الحرف الأخير للصفة:

big → bigger than

thin → thinner than

2 Comparative form (long adjectives) صيغة المقارنة للصفات الطويلة

beautiful - exciting - interesting - colorful ، الصفات الطويلة تحتوي علي اكثر من حرف متحرك مثل ،
وتتكون من :

more أكثر } + long adjective + **than**
less اقل }

Ex: Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

Superlative Form صيغة التفضيل

تستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا عند مقارنة شخص أو شئ أو حيوان واحد مع مجموعته :

1 Superlative form (short adjectives) صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة

صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة التي تحتوي علي حرف متحرك وتتكون من :

the + short adjective + est

short → the **shortest**

tall → the **tallest**

small → the **smallest**

young → the **youngest**

Ex: The sun is **the brightest** star in the solar system.

● ملاحظات عند صيغة التفضيل العليا :

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (st) فقط ،

nice → the **nicest**

large → the **largest**

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest) :

heavy → the **heaviest**

pretty → the **prettiest**

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضع الحرف الأخير للصفة :

big → the **biggest**

thin → the **thinnest**

2 Superlative form (long adjectives) صيغة التفضيل للصفات الطويلة

● صيغة التفضيل للصفات الطويلة التي تحتوي علي اكثر من حرف متحرك واحد وتتكون من :

the most } + long adjective
the least }

Ex: Jupiter is **the most colorful** planet in the solar system.

● هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ :

• good جيد → **better than** افضل من → **the best** الأفضل

• bad سيئ → **worse than** اسوء من → **the worst** الأسوء

• far بعيد → **farther than** ابعد من → **the farthest** الأبعد



Answers to Paragraphs

1

Lesson 1

Our visit to the planetarium

I visited the planetarium last week. I learnt about the solar system. I saw many planets and stars at the big screen. The planets are amazing. Each planet is different from the other. I had a wonderful time.

2

Lesson 3

Working in a team

Yesterday, our science teacher asked us to make a classroom poster about the planets. Our classmates worked together after school. Some students wrote facts about planets. Other students drew colorful pictures. It was a great team.

3

Lessons 4&5

Your trip in space

I'm an astronaut. I travel to space by spaceship. I like studying the solar system and the planets. I can see the sun and the moon. Our galaxy is bigger than we imagine. Exploring the space is very exciting.

4

Al-Azhar Test

Our solar system

Our solar system is amazing. There are different planets and a lot of stars. The solar system is a part of the Milky Way. The Sun, Moon and planets make space exciting to explore.

5

Test on Unit 5

Your Amazing Dream

I had a dream last night. I was inside a spaceship with round windows. I saw the moon. It looked like a lamp. I met a kind alien with big eyes. There were houses like soft clouds. When I woke up, I still remembered the bright colors in space.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

نص الاستماع اخر الكتاب



1. The _____ flew high and landed on a planet.
 a slide b swing c spaceship
2. The houses looked like soft _____.
 a clouds b balls c stars
3. The swings were made of _____.
 a light b metal c stone

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ واكمل:

solar – screen – fun – museum

Teacher: Hello, Samy! Did you go to the space ① _____ ?

Samy : No, I didn't. What can I see there?

Teacher: You can see pictures of the ② _____ system.

Samy : That sounds ③ _____

Teacher: You can also see the Sun and the Moon on the big ④ _____

Samy : That's exciting. I want to go there soon!

3 Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Today is _____ than yesterday.
 a colder b cold c more cold d coldest
2. We live on _____, the third planet from the sun.
 a moon b star c Earth d Jupiter
3. This problem is _____ difficult than the last one.
 a the most b more c many d much
4. The astronauts are excited to _____ the space.
 a explore b sigh c remember d ask

Unit 5 Our Solar System

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. The large planet is Jupiter. (.....)
2. My school bag is heavy than my sister's bag. (.....)
3. The lion is the much dangerous animal. (.....)
4. The mouse is smaller then the cat. (.....)

5 Read the text and answer questions:

اقرأ النص واجب عن الأسئلة:

During the planet project, our classmates worked together. Some students drew pictures and the others wrote facts about the planets. At first, our class was messy, but we shared together to clean it.

My teacher was worried when he saw our friend, Hisham worked alone. He asked him to work with his classmates. Finally, the project was amazing. The teacher smiled and said, "Working together makes the job better and easier."

A) Write true (T) or false (F) :

	T	F
1. The table was dirty at first.	☐	☐
2. The teacher was worried when he saw Hisham working alone.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answer:

3. The other students wrote about the planets.
 a facts b stories c books d homework
4. together makes the job better.
 a Playing b Working c Sleeping d Watching

6 Write a paragraph of about 4 sentences about:

اكتب فقرة من 4 جمل عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Our Solar System

amazing - planets - space - explore

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Sara Sabry is the second female astronaut.	☐	☐
2. She inspired young people to follow their dreams.	☐	☐
3. She traveled into space in 2012.	☐	☐
4. She realized how small our planet is.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The went up into the dark sky.
 a rocket b slide c plane d planet
- is called the Red Planet.
 a Saturn b Mars c Jupiter d Mercury
- Mercury is smaller Earth.
 a as b then c that d than
- Saturn is the most planet for its rings.
 a large b heavy c famous d biggest

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

largest - rings - galaxy - soil - Earth

The solar system is made of the sun, the moon and the planets. The sun is at the center of the solar planet system. There are eight planets. Each planet is different from the other. For example, Mars has iron-rich ①, so it's called the Red Planet. Saturn is famous for its ② and Jupiter is the ③ planet. We live on ④ The world of planets is full of joy and colors.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Astronauts are brave people who travel into space to explore the universe. They study science and learn how to stay safe in space. Astronauts wear special suits because there is no air to breathe in space. These suits help them breathe and protect their bodies from extreme heat and cold. They live and work on space stations for months. When astronauts explore space, they provide us with useful information about planets, especially our planet Earth.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Astronauts learn how to stay in space.
 a dangerous b safe c sad d messy
- Astronauts work on space stations for
 a days b years c months d weeks

B. Answer the following questions:

- Who are astronauts?

- Why do astronauts wear special suits?

- What do astronauts provide us?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The cheetah is the (**fast**) land animal.
- Neptune is (**far**) than other planets.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. showed - The - his - alien - me - planet.

2. the - space - last - We - visited - week - museum.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. there are bright colors in space

2. did you make a poster about planets

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة

Your Amazing Dream

spaceship - rockets - clouds



Offline but happy غير متصل بالإنترنت

Learning Outcomes

Speaking:

- Retell the story "Offline but Happy" using their own words
يعيد الطلاب سرد القصة مستخدمين كلماتهم الخاصة.
- Discuss their own experiences about screen time and playing with friends
يناقش الطلاب تجاربهم الشخصية حول وقت استخدام الشاشات واللعب مع الأصدقاء.
- Create a short role-play inspired by the story
يؤدي الطلاب دوراً تمثيلاً قصيراً مستوحى من القصة.

Listening:

- Identify the gist
يحدد الطلاب الفكرة العامة.
- Identify the key details
يحدد الطلاب التفاصيل الرئيسية.
- Arrange events in the correct order after listening
يرتب الطلاب الأحداث بالترتيب الصحيح بعد الاستماع.
- Answer comprehension questions about what they heard
يجيب الطلاب عن أسئلة الفهم بما سمعوه.

Reading:

- Correctly identify the story elements
يحدد الطلاب عناصر القصة بشكل صحيح.
- Recognize new vocabulary from the story in context
يتعرف الطلاب على المفردات الجديدة من القصة من خلال السياق.
- Answer different level comprehension questions to show understanding of the text
يجيب الطلاب عن أسئلة فهم متنوعة المستويات لإظهار فهمهم للنص.

Writing:

- Write short paragraphs summarizing the story
يكتب الطلاب فقرات قصيرة تلخص القصة.
- Write a short paragraph about "A Day without screens"
يكتب الطلاب فقرة قصيرة عن (يوم بدون شاشات).
- Express personal opinions in writing
يعبر الطلاب عن آرائهم الشخصية كتابةً.

Characters of the story

شخصيات القصة



Tarek
طارق



Amir
أمير



Laila
ليلى

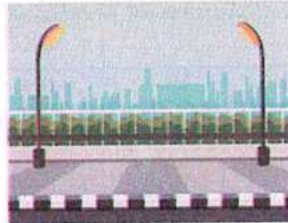


Dina
دينا

Story Vocabulary



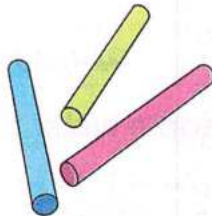
tablet
جهاز لوحي



sidewalk
رصيف



bored
يشعر بالملل



chalk
طباشير



sticks
عصي / عيدان



sunset
غروب الشمس

Definitions تعريفات

tablet جهاز لوحى (تابلت)	a small flat computer you can hold in your hands, like an iPad جهاز كمبيوتر صغير ومسطح يمكن حمله باليد، مثل جهاز الأيباد.
Wi-Fi واي فاي / اتصال لاسلكي بالإنترنت	wireless internet connection اتصال بالإنترنت لاسلكي.
level مستوى / مرحلة	a stage in a game or activity where you must complete tasks to move forward مرحلة في لعبة أو نشاط يجب إكمال مهام فيها للتقدم إلى المرحلة التالية.
excited متحمس / سعيد جداً	very happy and full of energy سعيد جداً ومليء بالطاقة.
bored يشعر بالملل	not interested or having nothing to do غير مهتم أو لا يوجد لديه ما يفعله.
lonely وحيد / يشعر بالوحدة	feeling sad because you are alone يشعر بالحزن بسبب كونه وحيداً.
rode ركب	to sit and move on a bike يجلس ويتحرك على دراجة.
called out نادى بصوت عالٍ	to shout so someone can hear you ينادي بصوت عالٍ حتى يسمعه الآخرون.
whispered همس / تحدث بصوت منخفض	to speak very softly يتحدث بصوت منخفض جداً.
breeze نسيم	a light, gentle wind نسيم خفيف ولطيف.
sidewalk رصيف	the path beside a road where people walk ممر بجانب الطريق مخصص للمشاة.
chalk طباشير	a soft white or colored stick used for writing or drawing عصا بيضاء أو ملونة ناعمة تُستخدم للكتابة أو الرسم.

1



It was a beautiful Friday morning. The sky was clear and blue, and the birds were singing in the trees. Tarek jumped out of bed, **grabbed**⁽¹⁾ his tablet, and smiled. "Today I'll reach level 20!" he said **proudly**⁽²⁾. He **pressed**⁽³⁾ the power **button**⁽⁴⁾. The game started, but when he tried to play, a message **popped up**⁽⁵⁾: "No Internet Connection!" Tarek **frowned**⁽⁶⁾ and tried again. Still nothing. "Mom! The Wi-Fi isn't working!" he called out. His mother walked in with a smile. "The Internet is down today. Maybe you can find something fun to do outside." Tarek sighed. "Fun? Without Wi-Fi? Impossible!"

كان صباح يوم جمعة جميلاً. كانت السماء صافية وزرقاء، وكانت الطيور تغرد في الأشجار. قفز طارق من سريره، وأمسك بجهازه اللوحي، وابتسم. قال بفخر: «اليوم سأصل إلى المستوى العشرين!». ضغط على زر التشغيل. بدأت اللعبة، ولكن عندما حاول أن يلعب، ظهرت رسالة تقول: «لا يوجد اتصال بالإنترنت!». عبس طارق وحاول مرة أخرى، ولكن دون جدوى. نادى قائلاً: «أمي! الواي فاي لا يعمل!». دخلت والدته وهي مبتسمة. قالت: «الإنترنت لا يعمل اليوم. ربما يمكنك أن تجد شيئاً ممتعاً لتفعله في الخارج». تنهد طارق وقال: «ممتع؟ بدون واي فاي؟ مستحيل!».

1- grabbed	امسك	2- proudly	بفخر	3- pressed	ضغط
4- button	زر	5- popped up	ظهر	5- frowned	كشر / عبس

2!

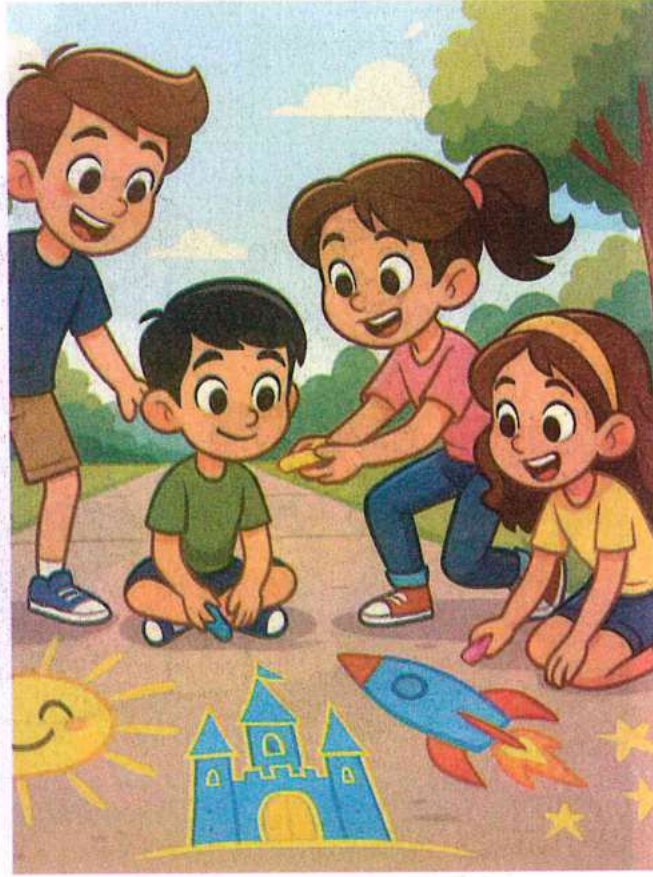


He sat on his bed, looking at his **silent**⁽¹⁾ tablet. The room felt empty and quiet. He tried watching old videos, but they weren't interesting anymore. Out the window, he saw Laila, Amir, and Dina laughing and running around with their bikes. Laila called: "Hey, Tarek! Come outside! We're going to the park!" Tarek **shook**⁽²⁾ his head. "No thanks! I'm... uh... busy!" But after a while, he started feeling **lonely**⁽³⁾. He **missed**⁽⁴⁾ laughing and talking with his friends. The tablet was just a silent screen now. He looked at it **again**⁽⁵⁾ and said **softly**⁽⁶⁾, "Maybe I'll just go for a few minutes."

جلس على سريره، ينظر إلى جهازه اللوحي الصامت. كانت الغرفة تبدو فارغة وهادئة. حاول مشاهدة بعض مقاطع الفيديو القديمة، لكنها لم تعد ممتعة بعد الآن. من خلال النافذة، رأى ليلي، وأمير، ودينا يضحكون ويركضون حولهم بدراجاتهم. نادى ليلي: «مرحبًا يا طارق! تعال إلى الخارج! سنذهب إلى الحديقة!» هز طارق رأسه. «لا شكرًا! أنا... أه... مشغول!» لكن بعد فترة، بدأ يشعر بالوحدة. اشتاق للضحك والتحدث مع أصدقائه. أصبح الجهاز اللوحي مجرد شاشة صامتة الآن. نظر إليه مرة أخرى وقال بهدوء: «ربما سأذهب لبضع دقائق فقط».

1- silent	صامت	2- shook	هز	3- lonely	بالوحدة
4- missed	فاته	5- again	مرة أخرى	6- softly	بصوت هادئ

3!

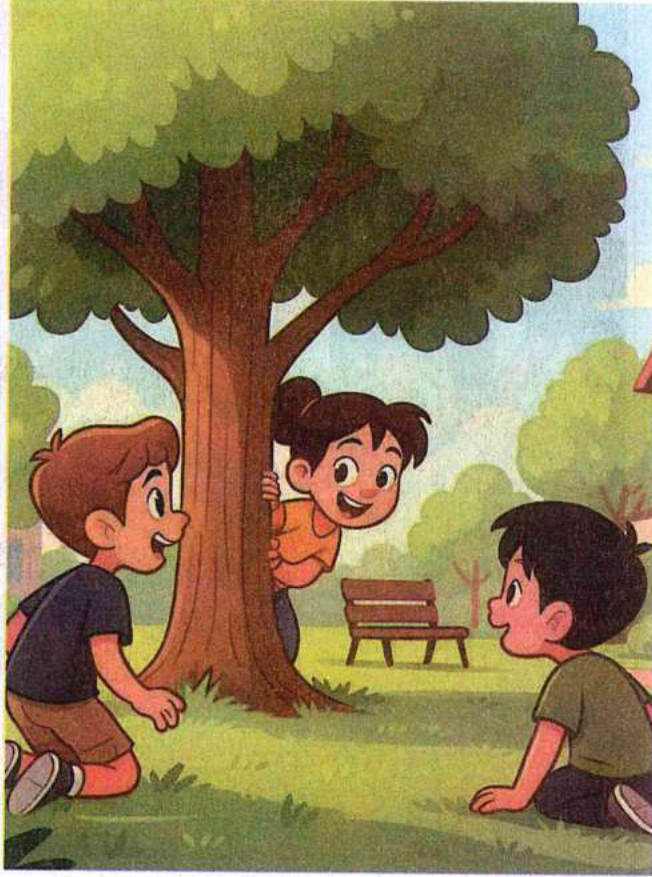


When he **stepped**⁽¹⁾ outside, the warm sunshine touched his face, and a cool **breeze**⁽²⁾ blew through his hair. Laila smiled and waved. "You came! We're drawing on the sidewalk. Want to help?" She **handed**⁽³⁾ him a piece of colorful chalk. Together, they drew a giant smiling sun, a tall castle, and even a rocket ship. Then Amir shouted, "Let's race to the park!" They rode their bikes, laughing the whole way. At the park, they played **hide-and-seek**,⁽⁴⁾ and built a **pretend shop**⁽⁵⁾ with leaves and sticks. Tarek laughed so much his stomach **hurt**⁽⁶⁾. "I forgot how much fun this is!" he said happily.

عندما خرج إلى الخارج، لمست أشعة الشمس الدافئة وجهه، وهبت نسمة هواء بارد حركت شعره. ابتسمت ليلي ولوحت بيدها. «لقد أتيت! نحن نرسم على الرصيف. هل تريد أن تساعدنا؟» سلمته قطعة من الطباشير الملون. معاً، رسموا شمساً مبتسمة كبيرة، وقلعة عالية، وحتى صاروخاً فضائياً. ثم صاح أمير: «هيا نتسابق الحديقة!» ركبوا دراجاتهم وهم يضحكون طوال الطريق. في الحديقة، لعبوا لعبة الغميضة، وبنوا متجرًا وهميًا باستخدام الأوراق والعصي. ضحك طارق كثيرًا حتى شعر بألم في بطنه من كثرة الضحك. قال بسعادة: «لقد نسيت كم هذا ممتع!»

1- stepped	خرج	2- breeze	نسيم هواء	3- handed	ناول
4- hide-and-seek		5- pretend shop	متجر وهمي	6- hurt	تألم
	لعبة الغميضة (الاستغماية)				

4

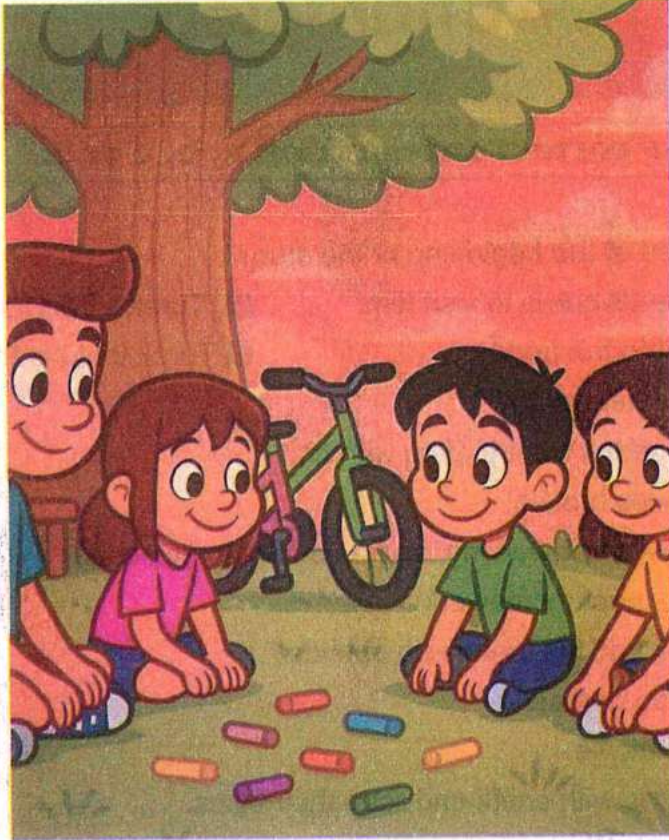


Later that afternoon, Tarek's mom called from the house, "Tarek! The Wi-Fi is back!" He stopped and looked at his friends. They were all **covered**⁽¹⁾ in chalk **dust**⁽²⁾ and smiling from ear to ear. He thought for a **second**⁽³⁾. Should he run back inside and play his game? Then Dina said, "Come on, Tarek! One more round of hide-and-seek!" Tarek smiled. "The Wi-Fi can **wait**!⁽⁴⁾" And off he ran, **laughing**⁽⁵⁾ **louder**⁽⁶⁾ than ever.

في وقت لاحق من بعد الظهر، نادى والد طارق من المنزل: «طارق! الواي فاي عاد!» توقف ونظر إلى أصدقائه. كانوا جميعًا مغطيين بغبار الطباشير ومبتسمين ابتسامة عريضة. فكر للحظة. هل يجب أن يركض إلى الداخل ويلعب لعبته؟ ثم قالت دينا: «هيا يا طارق! جولة أخرى من لعبة الغميضة!» ابتسم طارق وقال: «الواي فاي يمكن أن ينتظر!» وانطلق يركض، ضاحكًا بصوت أعلى من أي وقت مضى.

1- covered	مغطى	2- dust	تراب	3- second	ثانية
4- wait	ينتظر	5- laughing	ضحك	6- louder	بصوت أعلى

5



At **sunset**⁽¹⁾, the four friends sat under the big tree, watching the sky turn orange and pink. Laila said, "This was the best day ever."

Tarek smiled and **nodded**⁽²⁾. "You know what? I didn't even miss my tablet. I think real life is more fun." When he went to bed that night, he **placed**⁽³⁾ his tablet on the shelf and whispered, "You're fun, but my friends are even more fun." From that day on, Tarek still used his tablet-but only at the **minimal use**⁽⁴⁾ after he spent time with his friends. Because he learned something important:

No tablet, phone, or screen can ever replace the **joy**⁽⁵⁾ of **friendship**⁽⁶⁾.

عند غروب الشمس، جلس الأصدقاء الأربعة تحت الشجرة الكبيرة، يراقبون السماء وهي تتحول إلى اللون البرتقالي والوردي. قالت ليلى: «كان هذا أفضل يوم على الإطلاق.» ابتسم طارق وأومأ برأسه. «هل تعرفون؟ لم أفقد جهازي اللوحي حتى. أعتقد أن الحياة الواقعية أكثر متعة.» عندما ذهب إلى سريره تلك الليلة، وضع جهازه اللوحي على الرف وهمس: «أنت ممتع، لكن أصدقائي أكثر متعة.» من ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا، استمر طارق في استخدام جهازه اللوحي—ولكن فقط بشكل محدود بعد أن قضى وقتًا مع أصدقائه. لأنه تعلم شيئًا مهمًا: لا يمكن لأي جهاز لوحي أو هاتف أو شاشة أن يحل مكان متعة الصداقة.

1- sunset	غروب الشمس	2- nodded	أومأ برأسه	3- placed	وضع
4- minimal use	استخدام محدود	5- joy	متعة	6- friendship	صداقة

★ Characters

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. What happened at the beginning of the story?
☐ a Tarek's friends came to visit him. ☒ b Tarek's Wi-Fi stopped working.
☐ c Tarek went to the park. ☐ d Tarek lost his tablet.
2. Why did Tarek feel bored?
☐ a His friends didn't want to play with him.
☐ b His tablet was broken.
☐ c The Wi-Fi was not working, so he couldn't play online.
☐ d He had too much homework.
3. What did Tarek and his friends do outside?
☐ a Played video games.
☐ b Watched a movie.
☐ c Drew pictures with chalk and rode their bikes.
☐ d Built a sandcastle.
4. When the Wi-Fi came back, what did Tarek decide to do?
☐ a Go back home and play his game. ☐ b Keep playing with his friends.
☐ c Watch TV. ☐ d Tell his mom to turn it off again.
5. What lesson did Tarek learn at the end?
☐ a Wi-Fi is more important than school. ☐ b Friends are more fun than screens.
☐ c Drawing is boring. ☐ d He should buy a new tablet.

2 Write the numbers 1-5 to show the correct order of the events:

اكتب الأرقام من ١ - ٥ لتوضيح الترتيب الصحيح للأحداث:

1. Tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi wasn't working. ☐
2. Tarek went outside and had fun playing with his friends. ☐
3. Tarek woke up excited to play on his tablet. ☒ 1
4. Tarek's mom said the Wi-Fi was back, but he chose to stay and play. ☐
5. At night, Tarek realized that friends are more fun than screens. ☐

اكتب صح أم خطأ:

3 Write T (true) or F (false):

1. Tarek was excited to play his favorite game on his tablet in the morning.

T

2. The Wi-Fi stopped working in Tarek's house.

3. Tarek and his friends had fun drawing with chalk and riding their bikes.

4. When the Wi-Fi came back, Tarek ran home immediately to play online.

5. At the end, Tarek decided that screens are more fun than friends.

4 Match the word with its definition:

صل الكلمة بالمعنى المناسب:

1 rode

2 whispered

3 bored

4 sidewalk

5 called out

a. not interested or having nothing to do.

b. to shout so someone can hear you

c. to speak very softly

d. to sit and move on a bike

e. the path beside a road where people walk

5 Read the story summary below and fill in the blanks using the correct words from the box:

اقرأ ملخص القصة واملأ الفراغات باستخدام الكلمات في القائمة:

friends - ~~tablet~~ - Wi-Fi - bored - outside - fun - lesson

Tarek was very excited to play on his ① tablet. On Friday morning, he grabbed his tablet, but the ② stopped working. At first, he felt ③ and didn't know what to do. Then he looked out the window and saw his ④ playing ⑤ He decided to join them, and together they laughed and had so much ⑥ At the end of the day, Tarek learned an important ⑦ that real friendship is better than any screen.

6 Answer the following questions:

أجب عن الأسئلة التالية:

1. Why do you think Tarek was upset when the Wi-Fi stopped working?

2. What make Tarek change his mind and go outside?

3. How do you think Tarek felt while playing with his friends? Explain why.

4. What do you think was the happiest moment in the story? Why?

5. How do friends make our lives better than screens do?

Review 2

on Units 4 & 5

Objectives of Review 2

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 4 - 5.

”يراجع الطلاب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

- To evaluate progress in Units 4 - 5.

”يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطلاب في استيعاب الوحدات من ٤ إلى ٥.

Review 2 ★ Units 4 - 5

Unit 4

Key vocabulary



police dogs

الكلاب البوليسية



guide dogs

كلاب الارشاد / التوجيه



dolphins

الدلافين



horses

خيول



criminals

مجرمون



water buffalo

جاموسة المياه



donkey

حمار



pigeon

حمامة



falcon

صقر



gecko

أبو بريص



scarab beetle

خنفساء الجعران



crops

محاصيل



loads

احمال



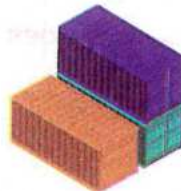
ripe

ناضج



routes

مسارات



containers

حاويات



plough

محراث



cows

بقرة



sheep

اغنام



guard dogs

كلاب حراسة



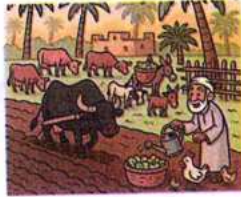
field

حقول



sweater

سترة



barn

حظيرة



grain

حبوب / غلال



carts

عربات كارو



egret

طائر ابوقردان



beak

منقار



hoppers

جراد



insect

حشرة

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Present Simple vs. Present Continuous

المضارع البسيط مقابل المضارع المستمر

A Present Simple المضارع البسيط

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم Present Simple للتعبير عن الحقائق، العادات، والوظائف.

Ex: A falcon **hunts** small animals.

2 Affirmative الإثبات

- هي حالة الإثبات يتكون من:

I / You / We / They + اسم جمع + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + اسم مفرد + (inf.) مصدر الفعل + s, es, ies

Ex: Geckos **eat** insects.

3 Negative النفي

I / You / We / They + اسم جمع + do not (don't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

He / She / It + اسم مفرد + does not (doesn't) + (inf.) مصدر الفعل

Ex: Falcons **don't hunt** at night.

4 Question السؤال

- هي حالة السؤال بهل ...؟

Do + I / you / we / they + (inf.) مصدر الفعل؟

Does + he / she / it + (inf.) مصدر الفعل؟

Ex: Does a gecko **eat** insects? - Yes, it **does**. / No, it **doesn't**. إجابة منفية / إجابة مثبتة.

Review 2

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

every day
كل يوم

always
دائماً

usually
عادةً

often
غالباً

on Mondays
كل يوم اثنين

B Present Continuous المضارع المستمر

1 Use الاستخدام

- نستخدم **Present Continuous** للأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو في هذه اللحظة.

Ex: Look! The falcon **is flying** over the field.

2 Affirmative الاثبات

I + **am** + (V + ing)
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is** + (V + ing)
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are** + (V + ing)

Ex: The donkey **is carrying** a heavy load now.

3 Negative النفي

I + **am not** ('m not) + (V + ing)
He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **is not** (isn't) + (V + ing)
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **are not** (aren't) + (V + ing)

Ex: The pigeons **aren't flying** at the moment.

4 Question السؤال

- في حالة السؤال بهل...؟

Am + I + (V + ing)?
Is + he / she / it + (V + ing)?
Are + you / we / they + (V + ing)?

Ex: **Is** the falcon **hunting**? - Yes, it is. إجابة مثبتة - No, it isn't. إجابة منفية

5 Key Words الكلمات الدالة

now
الآن

right now
في الحال

at the moment
في هذه اللحظة

today
اليوم

Look!
أنظروا

Listen!
أستمعوا

Unit 5

Key vocabulary



the Sun

الشمس



the Moon

القمر



the solar system

النظام الشمسى



galaxy

المجرة



Saturn

كوكب زحل



Mars

كوكب المريخ



Mercury

كوكب عطارد



Jupiter

كوكب المشتري



Earth

كوكب الأرض



Uranus

كوكب اورانوس



Neptune

كوكب نبتون



Venus

كوكب الزهرة



space museum

متحف الفضاء



planetarium

القبة السماوية



spaceship

سفينة فضاء



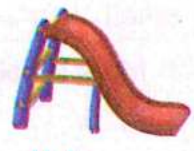
rocket

صاروخ



swing

إرجوحة



slide

زحليقة



star-ball rolling

كرة نجمية صغيرة



alien

كائن فضائي



soft clouds

سحب ناعمة



football

كرة القدم

Review 2

the Red Planet	الكوكب الأحمر	the Milky Way	مجرة درب التبانة
female	أنثى	drier	أجف
astronaut	رائد فضاء	farther	أبعد
inspire	يُلهم	describe	يصف
compared	قارن	imagine	يتخيل
the universe	الكون	realize	يدرك
classmates	زملاء الفصل	shook	هز رأسه
messy	فوضى	sighed	تنهد
teamwork	فريق عمل	took	استغرقت
landed	هبطت	glowing	متوهج
shaped like	شكله يشبه	once around	دورة واحدة
spin	تدور	edge	حافة
band of stars	شريط من النجوم	comets	مذنبات
asteroids	الكويكبات	billion	مليار

Language in Use

قواعد لغوية

Comparative Form

صيغة المقارنة

تستخدم صيغة المقارنة عند مقارنة شخصين أو شيئين أو حيوانين.

1 Comparative form (short adjectives) صيغة المقارنة للصفات القصيرة

الصفات القصيرة تحتوي على حرف متحرك واحد مثل، short - tall - small - young - big - pretty، وتتكون من:

short adjective + er + than

short → shorter than

tall → taller than

small → smaller than

young → younger than

Ex: Mars is **colder** than Mercury.

ملاحظات عند المقارنة:

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (r) فقط:

nice → nicer than

large → larger than

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ier):

heavy → heavier than

pretty → prettier than

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضاعف الحرف الأخير للصفة:

big → bigger than

thin → thinner than

2 Comparative form (long adjectives) صيغة المقارنة للصفات الطويلة

الصفات الطويلة تحتوي علي أكثر من حرف متحرك مثل، beautiful - exciting - interesting - colorful

وتتكون من:

more أكثر } + long adjective + **than**
less أقل }

Ex: Venus is **more beautiful than** Earth.

Superlative Form صيغة التفضيل

تستخدم صيغة التفضيل العليا عند مقارنة شخص أو شيء أو حيوان واحد مع مجموعته:

1 Superlative form (short adjectives) صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة

صيغة التفضيل العليا للصفات القصيرة التي تحتوي علي حرف متحرك وتتكون من:

the + short adjective + est

short → the **shortest**

tall → the **tallest**

small → the **smallest**

young → the **youngest**

Ex: The sun is **the brightest** star in the solar system.

ملاحظات عند صيغة التفضيل العليا:

١- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (e) نضع (st) فقط:

nice → the **nicest**

large → the **largest**

٢- إذا انتهت الصفة بحرف (y) نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (iest):

heavy → the **heaviest**

pretty → the **prettiest**

٣- إذا كان الحرف قبل الأخير في الصفة متحرك فنضاعف الحرف الأخير للصفة:

big → the **biggest**

thin → the **thinnest**

2 Superlative form (long adjectives) صيغة التفضيل للصفات الطويلة

صيغة التفضيل للصفات الطويلة التي تحتوي علي أكثر من حرف متحرك واحد وتتكون من:

the most } + long adjective
the least }

Ex: Jupiter is **the most colorful** planet in the solar system.

هناك صفات شاذة تحفظ:

• good جيد → **better than** أفضل من → **the best** الأفضل

• bad سيئ → **worse than** أسوأ من → **the worst** الأسوأ

• far بعيد → **farther than** أبعد من → **the farthest** الأبعد

Test on Units

4 & 5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Kareem and Samy were brothers.	☐	☐
2- First, they made the poster together.	☐	☐
3- Samy's work took too long.	☐	☐
4- They learnt that working together is better.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Farmers keep animals in the

a store

b planet

c barn

d river

2. Adel is his homework right now.

a does

b doing

c did

d do

3. Egrets help farmers by eating

a fish

b pests

c birds

d aliens

4. My mother is the women in my family.

a kindest

b famous

c prettier

d more beautiful

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

swings - glowing - forget - alien - remembered

I had an amazing dream last night. I was on a spaceship. I saw an ① with glowing eyes and he came near me to show his planet. There were ② made of light. I played football with children. The football was like the ③ star-ball. When I woke up, I still ④ the bright colors in space.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Uncle Gamal is a clever farmer. He keeps many animals. His animals have important jobs. The water buffaloes help him pull the ploughs in the fields. The donkeys carry his crops to the market. He has dogs to protect his sheep. He gets milk from his cows for drinking and making cheese. He also keeps cats. They help him by catching mice that eat the grain. He's happy because his animals are hard and strong workers and make life better and easier.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The cats help uncle Gamal by catching

a pests

b mice

c sheep

d hoppers

2. Uncle Gamal's animals are workers.

a weak

b lazy

c strong

d small

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in two sentences.

4. How do the donkeys help uncle Gamal?

5. Which animals protect uncle Gamal's sheep?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My final exam was (**difficult**) test of the year.

2. Listen! Someone (**shouts**) in the street.

Review 2

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. made - about - planets - a poster - We .

2. ways - people - Dogs - help - many - in.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

1. horses keep us feel calm

2. why is the donkey a helper animal

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب عنه آخر الوحدة

How birds help farmers

egrets - falcons - chemicals

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في الكتاب



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع
الواردة في وحدات كتاب

Bit by Bit

Unit 1

Lesson (3)

Our hobby club had its first discussion today. We faced a small problem. Everyone wanted to work in the art room at the same time. There was a short argument. Then, Ali had a good solution. He decided to organize a schedule. We all met and made an agreement. This arrangement brought us excitement. Now, we can enjoy our creativity together.

Al Azhar Test

Zain's favorite hobby is cycling. When he goes cycling, he stays strong and energetic. It is a simple and relaxing activity. On weekends, he loves to ride his bicycle outside in the park.

Test (1) - Unit 1

Sandy wanted to start a new hobby. First, she decided on gardening. Next, she got seeds, soil, and a small pot. Then, she planted the seeds. She learned to care for them during the week. After that, she watched the progress. Finally, she saw the green plants! She felt proud.

Unit 2

Lesson (3)

Hospital 57-3-57 is known around the world for its good work. It gives hope to many families. The doctors and nurses work hard. They help every child heal and become strong again. The hospital shows that with good care and help, getting better is possible. It is a place of true hope.

Al Azhar Test

The City Hospital helps many people. The treatment there is at low cost. A friendly receptionist helps patients when they arrive. The hospital gives people hope and good care.

Test (2) - Unit 2

Youssef fell while playing and got hurt. He had a cut on his arm. He told his teacher. She took him to the nurse's room. The nurse was friendly. She cleaned the cut and put a bandage on it. She told Youssef to be careful. Now, Youssef plays more safely.

Unit

3

Lesson (3)

My family is going on a camping trip. We will drive to a quiet campsite near a lake. My dad and I are going to set up our big tent. At night, we will sit around the fire. My sister is going to tell stories. I am going to take photos of the stars. It will be fun.

Al- Azhar Test

Salma's family are going on a trip to the high mountains. They will pack very warm clothes. They will hike on a long nature trail and look for special flowers. At night, they will set up our small tent and make a campfire. They will take photos to share this adventure with my school friends.

Test (3) - Unit 3

Mazen is going to travel to Luxor and Aswan next month. In Luxor, he is going to explore the amazing open-air museum and see the tombs of powerful pharaohs. Then, he is going to take a Nile cruise south to Aswan. There, he is going to ride a traditional felucca boat and see the beautiful islands.

Review

1

Test (1 - 2 - 3)

At our School, a group of students decided to start a Hobby Club. The arrangement was simple: each student would share a special talent. In the art room, Sara showed her beautiful paintings. Her friendship with Maya grew stronger as they painted side by side. On the playground, Omar taught basketball skills, and his excitement made others want to join. In the library, Laila organized a reading corner.

Unit

4

Lesson (1)

Some animals have real jobs that help people. Police dogs are brave and smart. They find lost people and catch criminals using their strong noses. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely and cross streets. Horses help people feel calm and happy. Rescue dolphins help people who are in danger in the sea. These animals show that helping others is a very special job.

Lesson (2)

Animals help people in their daily lives, even birds and insects help, too. You can see scarab beetles make the soil better by breaking down waste. Geckos can climb on walls to eat insects. Falcons hunt small animals that damage crops.

Lesson (3)

Ali and his family are visiting a farm near their village today. They see many animal helpers working hard. The farmer is in the field with his water buffalo. Water buffaloes are very strong and can work for long hours. Near the road, the donkey is carrying heavy baskets. People often use donkeys to carry heavy loads through the streets. This donkey is probably going to the market with baskets of ripe dates. Ali is happy to see how animals help people every day.

Lesson (4)

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers right now. The narrator says that egrets help farmers by eating insects that harm crops. On the screen, a white egret is standing with his long legs. The egret has sharp beak to catch insects. He is catching hoppers that eat the rice plants in a field.

Al - Azhar Test

I went to my uncle's farm last weekend. I saw lots of animal helpers. I saw the egret standing on buffalo's back. The dogs guarded the sheep carefully.

Test (4) - Unit 4

Animals help us in many ways. Police dogs help find criminals. Dolphins can help rescue people in the water. Guide dogs help blind people walk safely. Horses can pull the carts.

Unit 5**Lesson (1)**

Mars is the fourth planet from the sun. It's called the Red Planet because there is iron on its soil, so it looks red. Mars is smaller than Earth. The weather on Mars is very cold.

Lesson (2)

The planets in the solar system are different. For example, Mercury is the smallest planet, but Jupiter is the largest planet. Mars is drier than Earth. Saturn has beautiful rings. Uranus and Neptune are colder and farther away.

Lesson (5)

The Milky Way is the galaxy that contains our solar system. It's very big and looks like a bright, wide band of stars in the night sky. The Milky Way has billions of stars, planets and other space objects. Our sun is just one of the many stars in the Milky Way. Scientists study it to learn more about space and the universe.

Al - Azhar Test

Last night, I had a dream. I was inside a shiny spaceship. It flew high and landed on a planet. There, I saw houses looked like soft clouds. There were swings made of light and the slide was colorful.

Test (5) - Unit 5

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She traveled into space in 2022. She inspired young people in Egypt to follow their dreams and believe that nothing is impossible. When she saw Earth from space, she realized how small our planet is compared to the universe.

Review 2**Test (4-5)**

Kareem and Samy were classmates in science class. Their teacher asked them to make a classroom poster about planets. First, Samy made everything by himself, but the work took too long. His teacher let him work with Kareem. They finished the poster and learnt that teamwork makes the job easier and better.

ENGLISH

ملحق تسميع المفردات والواجب المنزلي

الصف الخامس الابتدائي
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

20
26

5th
PRIMARY
SECOND TERM



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com



Lesson 1



Vocabulary

مذكرات.....	التزلج.....
تلوين.....	لعب ألعاب الطاولة (الألعاب اللوحية).....
مدهش.....	حل الألغاز.....
رائع.....	الغناء.....
خاص/مميز.....	الرسم.....
فرح.....	الحرف اليدوية بالورق.....
صيد السمك.....	العزف على البيانو.....
مبدع.....	هواية.....
طبيعي.....	عرض المواهب.....
مهارة.....	الرسم.....
ربما.....	صورة.....
ركوب الدراجات.....	كتابة القصص.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يشارك.....	شارك.....	يحضر.....	حضر.....
يؤدي.....	أدى.....	ينسى.....	نسى.....
يستمتع.....	استمتع.....	يُظهر.....	أظهر.....
يتذكر.....	تذكر.....	يكتب.....	كتب.....
يركب الدراجة.....	ركب الدراجة.....	يفعل.....	فعل.....
يتزلج.....	تزلج.....		

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

النجاح	وقت الفراغ
خوذة	العمل الجماعي
السلامة/الأمان	حل المشكلات
حفل موسيقي	الصبر
مريح	الإبداع
العمل المدرسي	قوى
بسيط	حيوي/نشيط
ذكي	العب لوحية
في الخارج	رئيسي/أساسي
فكرة	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يسترخي		ينمو/يزرع	
يمارس/يتدرب		يرسم	
يرسم/يلون		يقضي/يصرف	
يضع		يختار	
يكسب		يُعلم	
يتطلب		يفكر	

A

ctivities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I can do some _____ with paper.
 a. eating b. buying c. crafting d. making
2. I enjoy solving _____.
 a. mobiles b. plates c. computers d. puzzles
3. I have many hobbies which make my life _____.
 a. special b. bad c. tall d. high
4. I have a nice bike, I love _____.
 a. drawing b. painting c. walking d. cycling
5. A/An _____ is a natural skill.
 a. talent b. drawing c. cycling d. walking
6. I practice my hobbies in my _____ time.
 a. busy b. lazy c. wonderful d. free
7. In the past, I _____ ride a bike.
 a. can b. could c. am d. was
8. What _____ you do now? - I can run fast.
 a. can b. could c. can't d. am
9. Hobbies help us _____ and have fun.
 a. angry b. sadly c. badly d. relax
10. I like _____ on ice.
 a. cycling b. painting c. crafting d. skating

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

piano - story - painting - puzzles - bike

We have a hobby talent show class. Ali shows us his ① _____, he admires drawing. Adam shows us his performance by playing the ② _____. Omar enjoys solving ③ _____. Alaa likes ④ _____ writing. They have wonderful choices, hobbies make us special.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Hobbies are important for our minds. They all enjoy doing in their free time. I like story writing because it helps me use my imagination and create new ideas. My brother enjoys sports such as cycling or skating, which keep his body strong and active. Creative hobbies like painting or making crafts help children express their feelings. Hobbies are important in our lives for many reasons. **They reduce** stress after a long school day. Hobbies teach patience and improve focus.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of the verb "**reduce**" is _____.
 a. decrease b. increase c. remove d. complete
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to _____.
 a. people b. feelings c. crafts d. hobbies

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What do sports do?

4. Why are hobbies important?

5. How can making crafts help children?

Dictation & Exercises

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. swimming - Maya - and - likes - fishing.

2. help - earn - They - more - people - money.

3. enjoy - puzzles - I - solving.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Eman (**can't**) draw when she was ten.

2. Could you swim? - No, I (**can**).

3. Omar (**could**) run fast now.

4. They (**can't**) play yesterday because they had an exam.

5. If you study hard, you (**could**) have the full mark.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i enjoy solving puzzles

2. could that count as a hobby

3. we can choose from many hobbies

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

..... ترتيب/تنسيق	 مناقشة
..... صداقة	 اتفاق
..... إثارة/حماس	 قيادة
..... متعة/استمتاع	 إبداع
..... يهتم ب/يعتني ب	 خاص ب
..... زملاء الدراسة	 سريع
..... موهبة	 أدوات
..... غرفة الفن (المرسم)	 حركة
..... ركن القراءة	 عضوية
..... حل	 جدال/حُجة
..... مهارات كرة السلة	 أخيراً/في النهاية

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... ينظم/يرتب		 يلتقي/يقابل	.....
..... يقرر		 يصبح	.....
..... يعمل		 يخسر/يفقد	.....

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

..... استبيان	 الطبيعة
..... وعاء زراعة	 لوحة المفاتيح / الاورج
..... مثالي	 بذور
..... فوراً / على الفور	 تربة زراعية
..... رأي	 تقدم
..... اهتمامات	 خبرة / تجربة
..... زراعة الحدائق	 قصص مصورة
..... مثير	 أثناء / خلال
..... عظيم	 حقاً / بصدق

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... ينجز / يحقق		 يحضر	.....
..... يطابق / يتناسب مع		 يبني	.....
..... يجمع		 يبدأ	.....

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. My friend Omar organized a reading
 a. wall b. brick c. corner d. angle
2. All students would their talents.
 a. move b. share c. complete d. lose
3. Ali showed us his paintings in the room.
 a. art b. science c. teacher d. music
4. On the, Omar taught basketball skills.
 a. classroom b. playground c. laboratory d. corridor
5. He started a small garden because he enjoys caring for
 a. animals b. pets c. wilds d. plants
6. The of the new project was announced by the manager.
 a. agreement b. development c. excitement d. movement
7. Omar and Ali are, they are at the same class.
 a. brothers b. sisters c. mothers d. classmates
8. A/An is a group of questions that people answer to share their ideas.
 a. discussion b. survey c. leadership d. step
9. If you like, you might use an instrument like a guitar.
 a. science b. art c. planting d. music
10. What do we call using your voice to make music?
 a. skating b. cycling
 c. playing the piano d. singing

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

instruments - First - then - free - seeds

You should follow steps to start a hobby. ① _____, take a moment to think about what you love. Do you like music, art or nature? In your ② _____ time, if you like music, you might use a/an ③ _____. If you admire gardening, you will need soil and ④ _____.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar wanted to start a new hobby, but he didn't know how. First, he wrote a list of hobbies he liked, such as drawing, swimming, and playing the oud. Then he chose the hobby that fit his school schedule, and drawing was the best choice for him.

Next, Omar prepared the tools he needed: paper, colors, and a special notebook for his ideas. He also made a simple plan. He decided to practice for ten minutes every day so he wouldn't get bored. After two weeks, Omar felt happy because he **improved** and followed clear steps to start his new hobby.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- Omar chose drawing because it _____ his school schedule.
a. needs b. fits c. moves d. buys
- The word "**improved**" in the text means became _____.
a. worse b. working c. better d. butter

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What were some hobbies on Omar's list?

4. Why did Omar make a simple plan?

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. day - would - Each - own - hobby - its - have.

2. students - A group - decided - of - to - a hobby - start.

3. interests - matches - Choose - a - your - hobby - that.

4. hobby - your - new - practicing - Start.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you want to try something exciting

2. sara showed her beautiful paintings

3. you will need seeds, soils and a small pot

4. do you like music, art or nature

Test on Unit 1

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Hobbies are important.	☐	☐
2. They help us relax and bored.	☐	☐
3. Hobbies show how people grow.	☐	☐
4. Children can walk.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We can do our hobbies in our _____ time.
a. busy b. crowded c. wide d. free
- _____ is important to work in a team.
a. Leadership b. Movement c. Enjoyment d. Excitement
- I _____ catch a butterfly when I was young.
a. can b. can't c. could d. will
- Amira can't _____ a bike.
a. riding b. rode c. rides d. ride

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

library - plants - talent - basketball - school

Many students decided to start a hobby club. Each student would share a special
 ① Omar taught ② skills on the playground. Sami started a small
 garden, he taught caring for ③ Rovin organized a reading corner in the
 ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Many people enjoy hobbies in their free time. A hobby is something you like to do for fun and **relaxation**. There are many types of hobbies. Some are creative, like drawing, writing stories, or making crafts. Other hobbies are active, such as swimming, running, or riding a bike. Some people enjoy collecting things like stamps, coins, or stickers.

Having a hobby is very important. It helps you relax after a long day at school. Hobbies also help you learn new skills. For example, Drawing can improve your imagination.

A. Choose the correct answer:

- The word **relaxation** in the passage means.....
 a. danger b. rest c. noise d. work
- Many people enjoy.....
 a. studying b. walking c. hobbies d. works

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do you think hobbies help reduce stress after school?

4. Mention a hobby that can improve your imagination.

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Omar (**can't**) walk when he was younger.
- Can Ali run? No, he (**can**).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. decided - a - to - **They** - hobby - club - start.

2. is - of - questions - **A survey** - a group.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what makes you happy in your free time

2. you must follow the steps to solve the puzzle

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite hobby

free time - reading - library

Unit 2 At the doctor's

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

..... التهاب الحلق	 دواء
..... صداع	 يؤذي / يؤلم
..... ألم في المعدة	 عيادة
..... كحة (سعال)	 فحص طبي
..... صيدلية	 غرفة الفحص
..... ارتفاع ضغط الدم	 خطير
..... معدة / بطن	 ألم الأسنان
..... سوائل دافئة	 ساق مكسورة
..... نصيحة	 حمى
..... ممرضة	 قواعد
..... جسم	 ألم

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يستريح		 يشرب	.....
..... يحب		 يشتري	.....
..... يحتاج		 يشعر	.....
..... يساعد		 يأتي	.....
.....		 يؤلم	.....

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

خطير

صندوق/حقيبة الإسعافات الأولية

جاهز

ضمدات

تام/كامل

لاصقات طبية

الوالدان

جروح/قُطوع

بأمان

كدمات

مغلق (بالمفتاح/مُقفَل)

مُصاب/جريح

غرفة الانتظار

مقص

غرفة الممرضة

في الداخل

حادثة

فورا/على الفور

إذن/تصريح

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفحص / يتحقق من		يُخبر	
يتصل		يبقى/يحافظ على	
يتجاهل		لديه/عنده	
يتجنب		يسعل/يكح	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. If you have a cough, you should drink liquids.
 a. cold b. warm c. cool d. ice
2. If you feel, you should visit the doctor.
 a. sick b. well c. good d. better
3. Let's go to the to get your medicine.
 a. school b. office c. library d. pharmacy
4. First aid kit is important for small
 a. accidents b. ideas c. flowers d. beaches
5. Nurses must make the kit is always ready.
 a. sure b. quiet c. early d. silent
6. Doctors check us at the room.
 a. cooking b. waiting c. cooking d. examination
7. My body I don't feel better.
 a. hurt b. hurts c. hurting d. will hurt
8. She a headache.
 a. has b. have c. is having d. are having
9. They a cough.
 a. has b. have c. having d. are
10. The room is a place where students go when they feel sick at school.
 a. teacher's b. nurse's c. principal's d. vet's
11. The is a person who gives you medicine at school.
 a. teacher b. vet c. engineer d. nurse

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hurt - tells - checks - scissors - books

At the school, we have a first aid kit in the nurse's room. There are bandages and ① If a student gets ②, the nurse ③ him and she ④ their parents.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

When we feel sick, we usually visit the doctor. The doctor checks our temperature and listens to our breathing. Then he gives us good advice. He often tells us to drink warm drinks to help our throat and body feel better. Sometimes we have a stomachache. So the doctor asks us about what we ate and tells us avoid heavy food. He may also give us special medicine to calm the stomach. After that we go to the pharmacy to get the right medicine. Taking the correct medicine helps us **recover** faster and return to our normal activities.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The word **recover** means become

- a. unhealthy b. healthy c. ill d. sick

2. We get the right at the pharmacy.

- a. food b. juice c. medicine d. dress

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How does taking the right medicine help us?

.....

4. Where can we go when we feel sick?

.....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

.....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Omar must (**taking**) the right medicine.
2. I (**has**) to drink warm drinks.
3. Sara (**don't**) have to go to the doctor.
4. You (**must**) drink cold drinks if you are sick
5. He doesn't (**has**) to eat his breakfast.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. the - students - help - to - how - knows - The nurse.

2. room - come - Please - the - examination - to.

3. rest - and - my - medicine - I - take - must.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. what rules can help us stay healthy

2. nurses must make sure the kit is always clean

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

علاج	تبرع
أمل	رعاية/ عناية
قابل للشفاء / قابل للعلاج	موظف الاستقبال
قابل للغسل	غرفة الفحص / غرفة المعاينة
ممتع	اختبارات / فحوصات
قابل للكسر	يشفى / يلتئم الجرح
يمكن الوصول إليه / متاح	يتبرع
مرئي / ظاهر	يسجل الوصول
فظيع / رهيب	مشهور / معروف
ممكن / محتمل	غرفة اللعب
شخص بالغ	دراسات
مفعم بالأمل / متفائل	ودود / لطيف
مريح	خطة
قابل للقراءة	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يشرح / يوضح		يدفع	
يستمر / يواصل		يأخذ	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

..... بريد إلكتروني رسمي

..... تفهم

..... نصيحة صحية

..... يشعر بتحسن

..... احصل على قسط كافٍ من النوم

..... كل طعاماً صحياً

..... يشكر... على

..... إجازة مرضية

..... طلب

..... أطيب التحيات

..... فاصل كتاب / علامة مرجعية

..... اغسل يديك

..... مارس الرياضة كل يوم

..... بعيداً عن

..... يكون قادراً على

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يستلم/يتلقى		 يرسل	
..... يعود/يرجع		 يدع/يسمح	

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. Hospital 57-3-57 helps children who are
 a. sick b. well c. better d. butter
2. Doctors the treatment plan.
 a. move b. pay c. explain d. check
3. The friendly help children check in hospital.
 a. teacher b. vet c. engineer d. receptionist
4. People in Egypt money to the hospital.
 a. take b. donate c. cover d. play
5. Teachers help children continue their
 a. moving b. hair c. studies d. shopping
6. In Hospital 57-3-57, the treatment is for the children.
 a. free b. bad c. for money d. cash

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

children - sick - pay - treatment - adults

Egyptian People donate money to build 57-3-57 hospital. It is for ① The hospital is very big and helps children who are ② The ③ is free for all the children. Families do not have to ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة :

Hospital 57-3-57 is a special hospital in Egypt. It was built thanks to the efforts of many Egyptians who wanted to help children in need. This hospital treats children for free. So, families do not have to worry about paying for medical care.

The hospital has many facilities for children. There are doctors and nurses who are experts in treating different illnesses. It has a Pharmacy, a play area, and rooms for children to rest.

Dictation & Exercises

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Children do not have to about paying.
a. worry b. take c. talk d. think
2. The word **care** means look
a. for b. after c. at d. it

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in one sentence.
.....

4. What does the hospital have?
.....

5. Who helped to build the hospital?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. plan - the treatment - **The doctor** - explains.
.....

2. the hospital - to - money - donate - Egypt - in - people - **Many**.
.....

3. sick - who - **The hospital** - helps - are - children.
.....

4. work - to - come - to - able - be - not - will - **I**.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. thank you for your understanding
.....

2. the doctor explains the treatment plan
.....

3. i need to rest at home
.....

Test on Unit 2

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



- The nurse's room isn't very important.
- The room has bandages and plasters.
- Nurses mustn't call parents if a student feels too sick.
- The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- We get our medicine at the
a. school b. vet c. library d. pharmacy
- We sit in the room until we see the doctor.
a. art b. music c. waiting d. singing
- Children to get enough sleep every night.
a. have b. has c. is having d. are having
- You drink plenty of water.
a. do b. must c. mustn't d. doesn't

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

examination - waiting - rest - warm - care

I have a cough and sore throat. I go to the doctor. He checks me at the ① room. He advises me to drink ② drinks. He says I must take ③ of myself and have a ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Staying healthy is important for everyone. We should take care of our bodies every day. Washing our hands helps us stay clean and avoid sickness. In cold weather, we should wear warm clothes to protect ourselves.

Eating healthy food is also very important. Fruits and vegetables help our bodies

Dictation & Exercises

grow strong. When we are healthy, we can study well, play happily, and enjoy our time.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. We should wash our
a. hands b. hair c. shoes d. toys
2. Healthy food helps our bodies
a. feel sick b. grow strong c. sleep all day d. feel tired

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why should we wash our hands?
4. What should we wear in cold weather?
5. Mention one thing we can do when we are healthy.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. You (mustn't) wash your face after waking up.
2. She (not / have) to drink warm drinks.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. for - plan - explains - The doctor - the treatment - us.

2. treatment - for - the - is - free - children - All.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. the receptionist helps children check in
2. how are you feeling today

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Requesting sick leave

sick - come - cough

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

..... حقبة سفر	 تذكرة
..... يحزم/ يعبئ (الأمعة)	 إجازة/ عطلة
..... يسافر	 قلعة قايتباي
..... مزدحم	 رحلة
..... شاطئ	 مكتبة الإسكندرية
..... فرشاة أسنان	 صيف
..... واقي شمس	 رملي/ مليئ بالرمال
..... فارغ	 ملابس
..... رخيص	 متحمس/ سعيد جداً
..... بلد/ دولة	 بدلة سباحة (مايوه)
..... عائلات	 باستثناء
	 سعيد/ مسرور

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يثبت		 ينسى	.....
..... يدخل		 يبني	.....
..... يصدق/ يؤمن		 يذكر	.....
..... يمر (الوقت)			

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

أبو الهول.....	الأهرامات.....
مقبرة.....	معبد مصري.....
قوي.....	قارب في نهر النيل.....
فلوكة.....	الفراعة.....
رائع / مدهش.....	ملوك مصر القدماء.....
فرصة.....	رحلة نيلية.....
بدلاً من ذلك.....	متحف مفتوح.....
طفولة.....	جزيرة.....
يكتشف.....	الوطن الأم / البلد الأصلي.....
خاص / مميز.....	مصري.....
خفيف.....	أهرامات الجيزة الكبرى.....
ملابس.....	طقس.....
نظارة شمسية.....	مغامرة.....
تراث.....	

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يسمي		يقضى (وقت)	
يستكشف		يعرف	
يقيم		يبنى	

Activities

Lessons 1&2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I have to my suitcase for travelling.

- a. back b. pack c. book d. travel

2. The beach is a place near the sea.

- a. wet b. dry c. sandy d. ice

3. We took a on the Nile River at sunset.

- a. boat b. car c. motorbike d. monorail

4. I can sandcastles on the beach.

- a. give b. build c. cover d. swim

5. I pay for the to ride the metro.

- a. book b. bag c. ticket d. pen

6. The time quickly during our trip to the theme park.

- a. passes b. plays c. crosses d. sings

7. The bus is it has many people.

- a. empty b. crowded c. fat d. deep

8. I pack my with my clothes before traveling.

- a. booklet b. plate c. suitcase d. ticket

Dictation & Exercises

9. Alexandria has Qaitbay

- a. school b. library c. pavement d. Citadel

10. You should put when you are on the beach.

- a. sunscreen b. notebook c. glue d. ink

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

sandcastles - tickets - enjoy - walk - pack

Mona and Alaa are going to travel to Sharm El-Sheikh. They ① their suitcases. They pay for the ② of the bus. They will ③ their time and swim and build ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة: SB

Next summer, my family and I are going to travel to Marsa Matrouh. We are going to spend our holiday on the beautiful beach. The water is going to be clear and blue, and the soft sand is going to make us feel relaxed. We are going to play, swim, and enjoy the warm sun every day.

Before the trip, we are going to prepare everything carefully. We are going to **pack** our bags with clothes, swimming suits, sunscreen, and snacks. My father is going to check the tickets and make sure the travel times are correct. When we arrive, we are going to feel happy and ready to enjoy our holiday.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. You should put when you are on the beach.

- a. salt b. ink c. glue d. sunscreen

2. The word **pack** means things into your bags.

- a. put b. give c. move d. use

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why is the family going to prepare their bags before the trip?

.....

4. What things you can take with you if you go to the beach?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس :

1. She is (**goes**) to stay in a hotel.

2. Alaa (**be**) going to write a letter.

3. Are you going to wear sunglasses? – Yes, I (**is**).

4. They (**be / not**) going to visit Cairo tomorrow.

5. My friends are going to (**staying**) in a hotel.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. trip - This - wonderful - chance - is - a - the family - for.

2. pass - make - to - together - We - sing - can - songs - time.

3. your - you - Did - pack - suitcase?

4. Alexandria - you - most - What - are - excited - in - see - to?

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

..... نار المعسكر / نار التخييم

..... مسار طبيعي

..... يتنزه / يمشي لمسافات طويلة

..... ينصب / يركب

..... تخييم / معسكر

..... دافئ

..... موقع المعسكر

..... خيمة

..... جبل

..... نباتات صحراوية

..... بحيرة

..... صحراء

..... أغراض / أدوات

..... محمية وادي الجمال

..... مصباح يدوي

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يتخيل		 يُحضر / يجلب	.....
..... يستلم / يتلقى		 يترك / يغادر	.....
..... يصل			

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

لذيق	البحر الاحمر
مركبة/ عربية	كشري
حقيقة	يدعو
دعوة	يعد

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يفتقد		يركب	
يجرب		ينسي	

Activities Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We sit around a and tell stories.

- a. campfire b. trail c. hole d. hail

2. I bring clothes in the winter.

- a. cool b. cold c. warm d. tall

3. We are going to on a nature trail.

- a. write b. hike c. see d. keep

4. We up tents near amazing mountains.

- a. set b. sit c. eat d. play

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

crowded - warm - tall - stories - campfire

We are going to camp in the desert. We pack our suitcases with ① clothes. The campsite is going to be ② because there are many people. We sit around a ③ and tell ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

This summer, my family is going to visit Egypt. Egypt is a very old and beautiful country. It has many famous places to see, such as the pyramids and the sea. We are very happy because this is our first visit to Egypt.

Before the trip, we prepare our bags at home. We pack our clothes, shoes, food, and drinks. My mother puts sunscreen in the bag to protect us from the sun. My father packs a camera to take photos of our trip.

When we go to the beach, we swim in the sea and play on the sand. We enjoy our time and have a lot of fun together. We hope to have a great summer holiday in Egypt.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The family is visiting Egypt for the time.

☐ a second

☐ b last

☐ c first

☐ d many

2. Why does the mother put sunscreen in the bag?

☐ a To take photos

☐ b To protect them from the sun

☐ c To swim

☐ d To clean the bags

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name two famous places mentioned in the text.

.....

4. Who packs the camera, and why?

.....

5. How does the family feel about their summer holiday?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً :

1. We - can - a boat - ride - the Nile - on - river.

2. you - see - I - can't - to - wait!

3. summer - visit - this - I - invite - to - to - want - you - Egypt.

4. do - it - How - did - you?

5. travel - when - they - pack - people - do - Why - suitcases?

6. doing - well - I - hope - are - you!

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي :

1. how did you do it

2. Don't forget to try egyptian food like koshari

3. I can ride a boat on the nile river.

Test on Unit 3

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. I go to a campsite with my family.	☐	☐
2. I pack my suitcases.	☐	☐
3. I wear cool clothes.	☐	☐
4. I sit around a campfire.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I take a boat called on the Nile.
a. motorbike b. spaceship c. felucca d. car
- I pay for the to ride the electric bus.
a. vase b. ticket c. book d. station
- I going to take my camera?
a. Is b. Are c. Am d. Was
- Nour is going to in a big hotel.
a. stays b. stay c. staying d. stayed

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

warm - suitcases - crowded - holiday - goes

Omar is going to travel to Alexandria. He is going to pack ① He is wearing ② clothes. He will go by bus. The bus will be ③ because it's the summer ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Next week, My family is going to travel to Dahab. We are going to buy our bus tickets early so we can find comfortable seats. The night before the trip, I am going to pack my bag with my beach clothes, a hat and sunscreen to protect my skin from the strong sun.

When we arrive in Dahab, we are going to enjoy its beautiful beaches and the clear blue water. We are also going to visit some historical places in Egypt during our holiday. I am very excited because we are going to have a great time and enjoy Egypt's wonderful weather.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. We are going to buy bus tickets so we can get
 a. food b. comfortable seats
 c. uncomfortable bags d. sunscreen
2. The word **excited** is the opposite of
 a. tall b. nice c. bored d. good

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we need to pack a hat for the trip?
4. Do you prefer visiting the beach or historical places and why?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. They _____ (be / going) to visit Cairo.
2. She is going to _____ (carrying) a suitcase.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. come - if - me - know - **Please** - let - you - can. -----
2. suitcase - **Did** - pack - you - your? -----

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I really want to see Qaitbay citadel - - - - -
2. the beach is a sandy place near the sea - - - - -

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن :

A visit to Egypt

The Cairo Tower - The Pyramids - The River Nile

Unit 4 Jobs in the Animal Kingdom!

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

الكلاب البوليسية.....	حيوانات.....
كلاب الارشاد/التوجيه.....	وظائف حقيقية.....
الدلافين.....	ضباط.....
خيول.....	الناس المفقودة/التائهة.....
مجرمون.....	انف.....
خاصاً.....	بعيدا.....
نباح الكلاب.....	المكفوفين.....
جودة.....	شوارع.....
قدرة/مقدرة.....	أقطار/بلاد.....
خطر.....	افضل.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يمشي.....		يعرف.....	
يعبر.....		يملك / لديه.....	
يتحرك.....		يجد.....	
ينقذ.....		يمسك / يقبض على.....	
يشم.....		يحصل على / يصبح.....	
يؤذى / يؤلم.....		يقضي وقتاً.....	
يوضح / يُظهر.....		يجعل / يصنع.....	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

محراث.....	جاموسة المياه.....
دور.....	حمام.....
التربة.....	حمامة.....
الحياة اليومية.....	صقر.....
سوق.....	خنفساء الجعران.....
ضيق.....	أبو بريص.....
رسول.....	محاصيل.....
فئران.....	احمال.....
مفيد.....	ناضج.....
سحلية.....	مسارات.....
أفات.....	حاويات.....
جاد في عمله.....	مؤن.....
قري.....	بلح.....
نفايات.....	خطابات.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يعمل.....		يعرف.....	
يزرع.....		يطير.....	
يحمل.....		يرى.....	
ينظر / يبحث.....		ياكل.....	
يتسلق.....		يزرع.....	
يساعد.....		يجز.....	
يجهز.....		يدمر / يتلف.....	

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. dogs are for blind people.
 a. Police b. Guide c. Criminal d. Brave
2. A is a bird that can find its way home from far away.
 a. donkey b. monkey c. pigeon d. cow
3. can carry heavy loads through villages and to markets.
 a. Donkeys b. Falcons c. Pigeons d. Cats
4. Does a gecko eat insects? - Yes, it
 a. do b. does c. don't d. doesn't
5. Look! The baby crying.
 a. was b. were c. is d. are
6. Water buffaloes plough through the field.
 a. pull b. eat c. show d. play
7. A can fly high in the sky and catch rats.
 a. donkey b. falcon c. camel d. buffalo
8. Scarab beetles can break down
 a. growing b. plants c. waste d. earth
9. Police dogs can catch
 a. criminals b. teachers c. countries d. dolphins
10. help people who are in danger in the sea.
 a. Donkeys b. Horses c. Dolphins d. Rats
11. Guide dogs help blind people move around without getting
 a. heart b. hurt c. far d. help
12. are fast animals which help people feel calm.
 a. Turtles b. Dolphins c. Horses d. Dogs

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

carry - buffaloes - danger - criminals - vets

Animals can help us in many ways. Police dogs can catch ① Donkeys can ② crops and water containers. Water ③ pull ploughs through the fields. Dolphins can help people who are in ④ in the sea.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Animals are important in our lives. Guide dogs can help blind people walk, cross streets. police dogs are brave and smart, they can catch criminals and help officers find lost people, they use strong noses to smell things from **far away**. Donkeys can carry heavy things. They can transport crops. They can carry goods to the market. Donkeys also know their routes very well. Dolphins also can rescue People who are in danger in the sea.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The opposite of "**far away**" is
 a. fast b. slow c. near d. danger
2. can rescue people in the sea.
 a. Donkeys b. Dolphins c. Dogs d. Cats

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

4. What can donkeys do?

5. How can dolphins help people?

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Geckos (**eats**) insects at homes.
2. What are the donkeys (**carry**) right now?
3. Water buffalo (**not / be**) pulling the plough now.
4. (**was**) you go to work early every day? Yes, I do.
5. Falcons are (**flies**) over the fields right now.

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. now - buffalo - with - his - The farmer - working - is.

2. beetle - The scarab - helping - the soil - is.

3. bird - a fast - The falcon - is - that - pests - hunts.

4. an important - Pigeons - job - as messenger- have.

5. they - do - How - people - help - Egypt - in?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم لآتي:

1. how do water buffaloes help Egyptian farmers

2. a falcon hunts small animals

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

..... كلاب حراسة	 اغنام
..... حيوانات	 بقر
..... أحمال ثقيلة	 حبوب/ غلال
..... الآخرون	 حظيرة
..... الحيوانات المساعدة	 ستره
..... جبن	 لبن طازج
..... سميك	 حشائش
..... بطاطين	 الصوف
..... آمن	 ذكي/ بارع
..... قوي	 دجاج
..... بلطف	 عربات كارو
..... ملابس	 حقل
	 فئران

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
..... يعمل		 يقول	.....
..... يحلب		 يعطي	.....
..... يراقب		 يحافظ / يبقي	.....
..... يحرس		 يضع (بيض)	.....
..... يشرح		 ينام	.....
..... يحمل		 يعتني بـ	.....
..... يعرض		 يسحب	.....
..... يتعلم		 يكون	.....

Lesson 4



Vocabulary

ذباب.....	منقار.....
مئات.....	جراد.....
مختلف.....	حشرة.....
سهل.....	طائر ابو قردان.....
فجأة.....	فلاح.....
الحياة البرية.....	شاشة.....
محاصيل.....	حاد.....
بسرعة.....	محاذيال / بجانب.....
نباتات الارز.....	ريش.....
ظهر.....	تحكم.....
مواد كيميائية.....	مفرد/فردى.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يشاهد.....		يكون.....	
يضر.....		يقول.....	
يهجم/ينقض.....		يأكل.....	
يعمل.....		يقف.....	
يزعج.....		يحصل على.....	
يستخدم.....		يطير.....	
يقدر.....		يجعل.....	
يوفر.....			

Activities

Lessons 3&4



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. The _____ live in the field and give us milk.

- a. cows b. donkeys c. dogs d. turtles

2. We use _____ to make sweaters and blankets.

- a. bamboo b. wool c. silver d. gold

3. The guard dogs are _____ over the sheep carefully.

- a. watching b. running c. learning d. visiting

4. The cat helps by catching _____ that might eat the grain.

- a. mice b. buffaloes c. horses d. donkeys

5. Chickens can lay _____.

- a. milk b. grass c. eggs d. meat

6. The _____ is a person who grows food.

- a. teacher b. farmer c. engineer d. principal

7. _____ have long legs that help them walk through water.

- a. Cats b. Egrets c. Monkeys d. Mice

8. Egrets eat flies that _____ the buffaloes.

- a. brother b. bother c. protect d. provide

9. Farmers don't need to use many _____ because of egrets.

- a. chemicals b. foods c. plastic d. glass

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

visit - wool - cows - milk - juice

Omar is visiting his uncle on the farm. His uncle keeps many animals. He has 1 that give us 2 and meat. Omar sees sheep on the farm that give us 3 In the morning, Omar drinks milk and fresh juice. Omar enjoys his 4 with his uncle very much.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملاً:

1. legs - long - Egrets - have.

2. birds - these - appreciate - Farmers - beautiful.

3. plants - eat - Hoppers - can - rice.

4. insects - of - hundreds - Egrets - eat - can.

5. the farm - on - see - you - can - What - animals?

6. does - How - help - the animals - the farmer ?

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what jobs do you think these animals do

2. omar and his family are visiting his uncle's farm

3. i like your poster

4. egrets can eat hundreds of insects

Test on Unit 4

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



	T	F
1. Animals can't help us.	☐	☐
2. Dolphins help people who are in danger.	☐	☐
3. Donkeys can't carry things.	☐	☐
4. Pigeons can be messengers.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Scarab beetles can help make the earth better for growing
 a. cats b. dogs c. plants d. planets
- Falcons can small animals that damage crops.
 a. hunt b. move c. travel d. carry
- I am my homework right now.
 a. write b. writing c. writes d. wrote
- cats eat rats? - Yes, they do.
 a. Do b. Does c. Is d. Are

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

buffaloes - crops - natural - appreciate - damage

Egyptian farmers have many animals that help them in daily life. Egyptian farmers use water ① to pull ploughs. They prepare the soil for planting ② Farmers ③ the egrets because they provide ④ insect control.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Ancient Egyptians cared a lot about animals because they were very helpful in daily life. The cat was especially important because it chased mice that damaged the crops, so it helped **protect** the farmers' food. Egyptians respected cats and saw them as a symbol of cleanliness and protection. They also raised chickens for eggs, goats for

Dictation & Exercises

milk, and cows and buffaloes to help pull carts, plow the fields, and provide milk. These animals were an important part of their life, giving them food, help with work, and safety for the farms.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. The word **protect** is opposite of
a. harm b. save c. keep d. move
2. Cats were important in ancient Egypt because they mice
a. guarded b. cleaned c. chased d. moved

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Name one reason why cats were important in ancient Egypt.
4. Which animal gave the Egyptians milk?
5. How did cows and buffaloes help farmers?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Right now, the falcon (**hunt**) small animals.
2. Water buffaloes usually (**pulls**) ploughs on farms.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. sheep - wool - from - **We** - get.
2. is - water - **What** - buffaloes- job of- the main?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what jobs do you think these animals do
2. a gecko eats mosquitoes

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Animal helpers

buffalo - donkey - egret

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 5 Our Solar System

Lesson 1



Vocabulary

النظام الشمسي.....	الشمس.....
المجرة.....	كوكب الأرض.....
القمر.....	كوكب المشتري.....
مجرة درب التبانة.....	كوكب عطارد.....
الكوكب الأحمر.....	كوكب المريخ.....
مرشد سياحي.....	كوكب زحل.....
كواكب.....	القبة السماوية.....
نجوم.....	متحف الفضاء.....
شاشة.....	كوكب الزهرة.....
غني بالحديد.....	كوكب نبتون.....
بالداخل.....	كوكب اورانوس.....
شقيق.....	بالضبط.....
مشهور.....	حلقات لامعة.....
مثير.....	افضل.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يُسمى.....		يتعلم.....	
يُطلق على/ يسمى.....		يري.....	
يستكشف.....		يجعل.....	
يبدو.....		يتحدث.....	

Lesson 2



Vocabulary

أجف.....	الكون.....
أبعد.....	أحلام.....
يصف.....	حلقات.....
يتخيل.....	رؤية.....
يدرك.....	الشباب.....
أنثي.....	أول عرب.....
رائد فضاء.....	مهندس.....
يُلهِم.....	لا شيء.....
قارن.....	مستحيل.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يسافر.....		يصبح.....	
يُلهِم.....		يجعل.....	
يقارن.....		يقول.....	
يصف.....		يمتلك / لديه.....	
يدرك.....		يتخيل.....	
يدرس.....		يعتقد.....	
يتتبع.....			

Activities

Lessons 1,2



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Venus is than Earth.

- a. hottest b. hotter c. hot d. the hot

2. Today is than yesterday.

- a. coldest b. colder c. cold d. the cold

3. Mars is the planet.

- a. red b. blue c. black d. yellow

4. A/An is a group of many stars.

- a. planet b. galaxy c. moon d. sun

5. Saturn is a planet of

- a. stars b. sun c. rings d. rocks

6. Our galaxy is called the way.

- a. milky b. blue c. green d. black

7. We went to the to learn about solar system.

- a. hospital b. cafe c. planetarium d. clinic

8. She could young people to follow their dreams.

- a. inspire b. give c. destroy d. run

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

dreams - space - impossible - inspire - destroy

Sara Sabry is the first Egyptian female astronaut. She became the first Arab engineer to travel into ① in 2022. She wants to ② young people to follow their ③ She believes that nothing is ④

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Mount Everest is the (high) mountain in the world.
2. Jupiter is (colorful) planet in the solar system.
3. A cat is (small) than a dog.
4. Venus is the (hot) planet in the solar system.
5. The cake is the (sweet) in the bakery.
6. This movie is (exciting) movie I have ever seen.
7. English is (easy) than French.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جمل:

1. do - you - one - Which - see - day - every?

2. imagine - we - than - bigger - The galaxy - is.

3. Earth - than - drier - is - Mars.

4. rings - its - for - famous - is - Saturn.

5. the solar - system - in - the largest - planet - Jupiter - is.

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i can see the Sun and the Moon

2. mars is the red planet

3. Sara Sabry is the first egyptian female astronaut

Lesson 3



Vocabulary

رسم الواجب المنزلي.....	هز رأسه.....
ساطع / لامع.....	تنهد.....
حصة العلوم.....	استغرقت.....
بهدوء.....	زملاء الفصل.....
قلق.....	فوضى.....
حقائق.....	فريق عمل.....
معا.....	أسهل.....
مشروع.....	أفضل.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يضيف.....		يعمل.....	
ينتهي.....		يهز رأسه.....	
يبتسم.....		يرسم.....	
يسأل.....		يستغرق.....	
يريد.....		يجلس.....	
يتنهد.....		يكتب.....	
يلون.....		يتعلم.....	

Lessons 4/5



Vocabulary

متوهج.....
دورة واحدة.....
حافة.....
مذنبات.....
مليار.....
صوت عال.....
نوافذ دائرية.....
السماء المظلمة.....
ملعب.....
مصباح.....
حلم.....
بالداخل.....
في الخارج.....
أضواء صغيرة.....
ألوان زاهية.....

كرة نجمية صغيرة.....
كائن فضائي.....
سحب ناعمة.....
كرة القدم.....
صاروخ.....
سفينة.....
إرجوحة.....
فضاء.....
زحليقة.....
هبطت.....
شكله يشبه.....
تدور.....
شريط من النجوم.....
الكويكبات.....

Conjugation of verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
يهبط.....		لديه / يمتلك.....	
يشبه.....		يصعد لأعلى.....	
يضحك.....		يرى.....	
يتسم.....		يبين / يوضح.....	
يتذكر.....			

Activities

Lessons 3,4&5



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة :

1. is working together to finish something.
 a. Teamwork b. Ring c. Paper d. Star
2. means not clean or not neat.
 a. Smart b. Messy c. Clear d. Clean
3. Saturn has which are thin circles.
 a. stars b. rings c. posters d. members
4. I travel to the space by
 a. motorbike b. car c. ship d. spaceship
5. The made a loud noise as it went up into sky.
 a. Star b. galaxy c. rocket d. planet
6. I made a about pollution to keep the earth clean.
 a. book b. email c. poster d. ring
7. My room is, the books are everywhere.
 a. clean b. colorful c. clear d. messy
8. We have 8, we live on the Earth.
 a. plants b. planets c. stars d. stairs

2 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار :

Mars - poster - time - Milky - hospital

We go to the planetarium. We see the red planet which is called ①..... We make a ②..... about planets. The poster takes long ③..... Our galaxy is called the ④..... Way.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Venus is the (hot) planet in the solar system.
2. Mona is (beautiful) girl in the class.
3. The rose is (more colorful) flower.
4. A lizard is (small) than a dog.
5. Omar is younger (then) Alaa.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. class - in - science - were - Nada - Adam - and - classmates.
.....
2. inside - was - a big - shiny - I - spaceship.
.....
3. himself - Omar - do - to - wanted - everything.
.....
4. clear - was - and - bright - The planet - poster.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. did you ever work with a friend on school work
.....
2. mars is called the red planet
.....
3. jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system
.....
4. what do you think the children are doing
.....

Test on Unit 5

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

	T	F
1. We visited the school.	☐	☐
2. Mars is the red planet.	☐	☐
3. Jupiter is the smallest planet.	☐	☐
4. Saturn is famous for its rings.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Saturn has beautiful around it.
a. stars b. rings c. posters d. stairs
- The spaceship into space.
a. walks b. lands c. takes d. sees
- Solar power is than fuel in long space missions.
a. useful b. more useful
c. the most useful d. most usefully
- The sun is star in our solar system.
a. bright b. brighter c. the brightest d. more bright

3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

red - green - moon - guide - soil

We are at the space museum. The ① talks about planets and stars. We see the sun and the ② Mars is the ③ planet because its iron-rich ④ makes it look red.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

There are eight planets in our solar system. Each planet has special features. Mercury is the closest planet to the sun, and it is very hot. Venus is also hot, but it is covered with thick clouds. Earth is the only planet that has air, water, and life. Mars is

Dictation & Exercises

called the Red Planet because it looks red. Jupiter is the **biggest** planet in the solar system. Saturn is famous for its beautiful rings. Uranus is very cold and spins on its side. Neptune is the farthest planet from the sun and has strong winds.

A. Choose the correct answer:

1. Earth is the only planet that has.....
a. rings b. life c. dead d. clouds
2. The opposite of **biggest** is
a. largest b. smallest c. tallest d. longest

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Which planet do you like most?
4. What might happen if a planet is very close to the sun?
5. What's the main idea of the passage?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. The parrot is the most (**more colorful**) bird.
2. My room is (**big**) than yours.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكوين جملًا:

1. drew - on the - Adam - a picture - blackboard.
2. the Milky - What - Way - is?

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. our solar system is part of the Milky Way
2. why do you think the dream was happy

8 Write a text of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

The planets

Mars - Jupiter - Earth

.....

.....

.....

امتحانات عامة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

Test 1

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. My friends will travel to a campsite near a lake.	☐	☐
2. During the day, we will hike on the mountain trail.	☐	☐
3. At night, they will cook food and sing songs.	☐	☐
4. The trip will be boring.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- _____ is the largest planet in the solar system.
a. Mars b. Venus c. Mercury d. Jupiter
- Yesterday, I went to the _____ to get medicine.
a. school b. market c. pharmacy d. library
- Water buffaloes usually _____ ploughs on farms.
a. pulls b. pull c. are pulling d. is pulling
- Hadeer _____ to take the medicine twice a day.
a. must b. have c. has d. has not

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

blind - carts - Dolphins - criminals - Falcons

People and animals can help each other every day. Police dogs help catch ① _____. They are brave and strong. Guide dogs help ② _____ people move safely. ③ _____ can help people in the water. Horses help pull ④ _____ around the farm. All these animals have real jobs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

To stay healthy, you should drink water, eat fruits, and sleep well. Exercise every day and stay active outdoors. Wash your hands and brush your teeth regularly. Avoid eating too many sweets or junk food. Take breaks when studying or doing homework. Spend time in the fresh air and enjoy nature. Following these healthy habits can help you grow strong and smart. Remember, staying healthy is fun and helps you feel happy, **energetic**, and ready to play and learn every day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
a. camping trips b. staying healthy c. important jobs d. animals helpers
- You should avoid for good health.
a. drinking water b. too many sweets c. fresh air d. taking breaks

B- Answer the following questions:

- What does the word "**energetic**" mean?
- What should you do every day for good health?
- Why is staying healthy important?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- The cheetah is the (**fast**) land animal.
- I (**can**) solve puzzles quickly when I was eight.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- skating - **Shady** - the park - loves - cycling - and - in.
- has - the best - in - world - **Egypt** - beaches - the.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- What was Nada and adam's project about
- tarek's mom told him that the Wi-Fi wasn't working

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Your favorite hobby

talent - share - important

.....

.....

.....

Test 2

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Sara visited Hospital 57-3-57 last week.
2. The hospital was dirty and dark.
3. The doctors and nurses were kind and friendly.
4. Sara learned that donations help give free care.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. When we play _____, we must think carefully to find the right piece.
 a. cycling b. board games c. painting d. puzzles
2. The word _____ means a large bag for clothes when traveling.
 a. ticket b. suitcase c. beach d. trip
3. We _____ to play outside because it's raining heavily.
 a. going b. not going c. is not going d. are not going
4. This problem is _____ than the last one.
 a. difficult b. most difficult c. more difficult d. the most difficult

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

chalk - drive - excitement - ride - board games

When I was ten, I loved to play outside every day. I could ① _____ my bicycle and go to the park. I liked drawing with colorful ② _____ on the sidewalk and singing songs with my friends. I could solve puzzles. I enjoyed playing ③ _____ with my family. Every day was full of fun and ④ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Malak and her brother are visiting their grandparents' farm today. They see many animals helping the farmers. The cows are in the field, giving fresh milk for the family. Nearby, sheep are eating grass, and a **clever** dog is guarding them carefully. Chickens are laying eggs, and a cat is catching mice near the barn. Horses are pulling carts, and donkeys are carrying heavy baskets of vegetables. Malak's grandmother says, "We care for our animals, and they help us every day." Malak feels happy seeing the animals work hard.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The passage is about
a. visiting a farm b. animal helpers c. family trips d. feeding animals
- The word "**clever**" has the same meaning of
a. stupid b. helpful c. smart d. useless

B- Answer the following questions:

- What animals do Malak and her brother see on the farm?
- How are donkeys good animal helpers?
- Why does Malak feel happy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Children (**must**) play near the pool; it's dangerous.
- Is Lily (**watch**) TV at the moment?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- warm - drink - **You** - rest - and - liquids - must.
- planet - the - in - the largest - **Jupiter** - solar system - is.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- My family are traveling to aswan
- where do you like to cycle

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A trip to the planetarium

solar system - planets - galaxy

.....

.....

.....

Test 3

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):



1. Younis is nine years old.
2. Younis will perform by playing the violin.
3. He practices every afternoon at school.
4. He hopes his classmates enjoy the music.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. _____ help farmers by hunting small animals that damage crops.
 - a. Pigeons
 - b. Falcons
 - c. Scarab beetles
 - d. Geckos
2. We spent the afternoon _____ with paper to make colorful decorations.
 - a. singing
 - b. cycling
 - c. crafting
 - d. solving
3. Solar power is _____ than fuel in long space missions.
 - a. the most useful
 - b. more useful
 - c. useful
 - d. most usefully
4. I forgot my keys at school, so I _____ enter the house now.
 - a. can
 - b. could
 - c. can't
 - d. couldn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

pharmacy - club - check-up - clinic - sore throat

Yesterday, I felt sick. I had a headache and a ① _____. I also had a fever, so my mom took me to the ② _____. In the examination room, the doctor did a ③ _____. He said it was not serious. I got some medicine from the ④ _____ and now I feel better.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Ahmed is a young student from Cairo. His favorite subject is science. He dreams of becoming an astronaut. Every night, he looks at the stars and the Moon. He learns about the planets. He knows Mercury is small and **hot**. Jupiter is the largest. Saturn has amazing rings. Ahmed wants to see Earth from space, just like Sara Sabry did. He wants to inspire his friends. He tells them, "The galaxy is bigger than our imagination. Follow your dreams!" Ahmed studies hard. He believes nothing is impossible. Maybe one day, he will travel to the stars.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ahmed's favorite subject is
a. mathe b. science c. Arabic d. English
- is described as having "amazing rings".
a. Mercury b. Jupiter c. Saturn d. Earth

B- Answer the following questions:

- Where does Ahmed live?
- What is the opposite of the word "**hot**"?
- Why does Ahmed study hard?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Every day, my grandma (**feed**) the animals on the farm.
- I (**not/ have**) wake up early tomorrow; it's a holiday.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- had - playing - with - **Mazen** - friends - fun - his.
- pack - tonight - going - **I'm** - my - to - suitcase

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- how do horses help people feel
- going cycling help people stay strong and energetic

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Animal helpers

hard - loads - ploughs

.....

.....

.....

Test 4

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The village is noisy and crowded like the city.	☐	☐
2. Grandma will cook delicious traditional food.	☐	☐
3. They will only stay for one day.	☐	☐
4. The speaker will help Grandpa in the garden.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The beach was _____ with many people.
a. crowded b. quiet c. lonely d. empty
- It's important to have a first _____ in your car.
a. accident b. aid kit c. medicine d. plasters
- The farmer _____ with his buffalo now. He is milking the cow.
a. is working b. isn't working c. works d. doesn't work
- We _____ wash our hands before eating.
a. must b. have c. mustn't d. don't have

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

universe - follow - imagine - space - inspire

Mae Jemison is a famous American astronaut. She became the first African American woman to travel into ① _____ in 1992. Mae says, "She wants to ② _____ young people to learn science and ③ _____ their dreams". Looking at Earth from space helped her understand how small and special our planet is in the large ④ _____.

Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

For a trip to the beach, I am going to pack my swimsuit, a towel, and sunscreen. I am going to take a hat and sunglasses to stay safe in the sun. I am going to **pack** a water bottle and some snacks. I can't forget the rackets and my beach ball. I am going to bring my camera to take pictures. Packing everything carefully will make the trip fun. I am excited to play, swim, and enjoy the beach all day.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The text is mainly about
a. beach safety
b. beach activities
c. packing for a beach trip
d. summer weather
- The word "**pack**" means
a. to put things into a bag
b. to eat food quickly
c. to swim in the sea
d. to build a sandcastle

B- Answer the following questions:

- Which item helps protect from the sun?
- Why is the writer going to bring a camera?
- What are TWO things the writer is going to do at the beach?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Today is (**cold**) than yesterday.
- (**Do**) you going to sing a song at the talent show?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- good - pictures - of - animals - **Dalida** - painting - is - at.
- carry - the markets - **Donkeys** - loads - to.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- why is it important to listen to the doctor's advice
- Nancy and walaa drew pictures with chalk

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Life without Wi- Fi

play outside - have fun - friendship

Test 5

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Laila and Mazen learned about space at the spaceship.	☐	☐
2. They saw the Sun and Moon on a big screen.	☐	☐
3. Jupiter is the smallest planet.	☐	☐
4. Mars is called the Blue Planet.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Near the _____, chickens lay eggs every morning for breakfast.
a. barn b. village c. city d. loads
- In the movie, the friendly alien had a shiny _____.
a. solar system b. cloud c. spaceship d. mountain
- _____ you ride a horse when you were three?
a. Can b. Could c. Do d. Are
- Sally and Nagwa _____ play tennis on Saturdays.
a. not b. aren't c. don't d. haven't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

treatment - pay - accessible - receptionist - donate

This hospital helps sick people for free. Many kind people ① _____ money. The ② _____ helps patients check in. In the examination room, the doctor gives ③ _____ and medicine. The hospital is comfortable. It is ④ _____ for everyone. Patients get well and feel happy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer, our family took a wonderful trip. First, we visited the beach in Alexandria. We swam in the sea and built big sandcastles. The sun was hot, so we wore hats and sunglasses. Next, we took a train to Luxor. We saw the amazing Karnak Temple. My father told us stories about the pharaohs. Then, we sailed on the Nile in a small boat called a felucca. The water was calm and blue. We ate fresh fish. It was a fun vacation. I felt happy to see beautiful places in my country with my family.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The father told stories about the
a. pharaohs b. temples c. Nile d. beaches
- A felucca is a small
a. boat b. train c. bus d. plane

B- Answer the following questions:

- Where did the family go first on their trip?
- Name two activities they did at the beach.
- Why was the writer happy?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- We must (listened) to our parents.
- Of all the planets, Neptune is the (far) from the sun.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- were - science - Zain - class - in - and - Rayan - classmates.
- brother - plays - happily - his friends - with - He - football.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- did you ride a camel in the Pyramids
- real friendship is better than any screen

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Spending time outside

activities - enjoy - picnics

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 6

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Donkeys pull ploughs on farms.	☐	☐
2. Scarab beetles work in the soil to make it better for plants.	☐	☐
3. Pigeons are helpful because they carry messages.	☐	☐
4. Humans and animals can work together to help each other.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The friends had a/ an to help each other.
a. excitement b. agreement c. movement d. argument
- The word "....." means not clean or not neat.
a. crowded b. messy c. dry d. thick
- You to visit the dentist tomorrow for your toothache.
a. must b. mustn't c. have d. not have
- Marwa a story, she isn't doing her homework.
a. isn't reading b. is reading c. reads d. read

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

excited - tickets - pack - crowded - travel

Next weekend, I am going to travel to the beach with my family. I will ① my swimming suit, towel, and snacks in my suitcase. We bought our ② yesterday. The bus to the beach is usually ③, so we will leave early. I am ④ to swim, play in the sand, and enjoy the sunny day by the sea.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Adam likes sports and music. Now, he can play basketball and teach his friends new skills. He can ride his bicycle in the park and enjoy skating with his friends. In the past, Adam couldn't ride a bicycle very well. He couldn't skate or play basketball alone. Adam **practiced** every weekend and got much better. Today, he can do many fun activities. Hobbies make Adam strong, healthy, happy, and energetic. He enjoys learning new skills every day and sharing them with others.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- Adam can teach his friends new
a. ideas b. skills c. lessons d. ways
- The underlined word "**practiced**" means
a. trained b. watched c. enjoyed d. skated

B- Answer the following questions:

- Summarize the text in two sentences.
- What does Adam like?
- How do hobbies help Adam?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Summer is (**popular**) season for holidays.
- Can Adel (**made**) the poster alone?

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- beautiful - **Venus** - Earth - is - than - more.
- hopes - **Karim** - better - feel - now - to.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- we are drawing on the sidewalk
- how can donation help sick people

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A story you read

library - wonderful - learned

Test 7

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Marwan wants to be a doctor.	☐	☐
2. Marwan likes maths and English.	☐	☐
3. Marwan feels nervous when he helps his community.	☐	☐
4. Doctors save lives and care for others every day.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- A / An _____ carries letters between places.
 a. scarab beetle b. guide dog c. egret d. pigeon
- The ship is _____ than the boat.
 a. large b. larger c. largest d. the largest
- We _____ the Sun rise at the planetarium right now.
 a. watch b. are watching c. watches d. is watching
- If you feel unwell at school, you should go to the _____ immediately.
 a. pharmacy b. waiting room
 c. examination room d. campsite

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

notebook - teamwork - ideas - blackboard - friendship

Nada and Adam wanted to finish their schoolwork on time. They read a storybook and shared ① _____. Adam drew a picture on the ② _____ while Nada wrote notes in her ③ _____. Together, they showed that ④ _____ and hard work can solve problems.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Next weekend, our class is going on a camping trip to Sinai Mountains. We are going to pack warm clothes, a **torch**, and water bottles in our suitcases. At the campsite, we will set up our tents near a small lake. In the evening, we will sit around a campfire, tell stories, and sing songs. During the day, we will hike on the nature trail and look for desert plants and birds. I am going to take many photos to share happy moments. This camping trip will be exciting!

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The students are going to pack
a. warm clothes b. a torch c. water bottles d. all of these
2. The word "**torch**" means a
a. type of tent b. flashlight c. water bottle d. lake

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
4. What activities will the students do around the campfire?
5. How will the camping trip be?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My sister was sad because she (**can't**) play the guitar.
2. Hany (**be**) going to see the ancient temples.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. could - when - read - I - was - six - **I** - stories.....
2. ploughs - farms - **Water buffaloes** - Egyptian - pull - on.....

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. dalia has a fever and a sore throat
2. did you watch TV yesterday

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Hospital 57-3-57

children's hospital - donate - treatment plan

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Razan watched a documentary about the solar system.	☐	☐
2. Sara Sabry was the first American female astronaut.	☐	☐
3. Sara Sabry traveled to space in 2023.	☐	☐
4. Reading the article made Razan feel proud.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I will by singing a song at the school concert.
a. perform b. pack c. donate d. hike
- Anas used his to color the picture he drew.
a. rings b. color pencils c. swings d. posters
- I the cow in the barn every day.
a. feed b. feeds c. am feeding d. not feed
- You tell an adult immediately if you see someone get hurt.
a. have b. mustn't c. don't have d. must

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

farmers - take - sheep - does - loads

On my grandfather's farm, I can see cows, sheep, chickens, donkeys, and a dog. The cows give milk, and we get wool from ① Chickens lay eggs, and donkeys carry ②, and the dog guards the animals. The ③ feed the animals, keep them safe, and ④ care of them every day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I took my first bus trip to the big city with my father. The bus was full of people. I sat by the window. I saw tall buildings, busy streets, and many cars. We visited a large library and a famous museum. We ate lunch in a park. The city was **noisier** and faster than my village. I liked seeing new places, but I was tired at the end of the day. I was happy to return home. It was an interesting adventure.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer sat by the in the bus.
a. door b. driver c. window d. father
- The word "**noisier**" means very
a. quiet b. loud c. big d. slow

B- Answer the following questions:

- Who did the writer go to the city with?
- What places did the writer visit in the city?
- Why was the writer happy to return home?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Is mom going (**buy**) fresh bread from the bakery today?
- The sun is (**more**) enormous star in our galaxy.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- a train - to - **We** - took - Luxor.
- people - money - to - Hospital 57-3-57 - **Many** - donate.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- Where did nelly go after seeing the doctor
- cycling is my favorite outdoor activity

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Healthy habits

What should you do to be healthy?
What should you eat and drink?
How many hours do you sleep?

.....

.....

.....

Test 9

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. When Yassin worked alone, the poster was messy.
2. Radwa didn't help Yassin make the poster.
3. At the end, the poster looked bright and clear.
4. Teamwork makes work easier and better.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The train was so that there were no empty seats left.
a. ancient b. crowded c. exciting d. dangerous
2. Look! The falcon over the field right now.
a. fly b. flies c. is flying d. are flying
3. Selim wear his school uniform on his school trip.
a. doesn't have to b. has c. have d. don't have to
4. help blind people walk safely and cross streets without getting hurt.
a. Police dogs b. Water buffaloes c. Guide dogs d. Scarab beetles

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

history - drove - warm - rode - exciting

Last summer, John visited Egypt with his family. They saw the Great Pyramids of Giza and ① a boat on the Nile River. They also went to the Red Sea and swam in the ② water. They tried koshari for the first time. Their visit to these places was ③ and fun. They learned a lot about the country and its ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Mariam was sitting on the sidewalk, feeling bored. Her tablet had no Wi-Fi, and she couldn't play her favorite game. A soft **breeze** made her hair move. She saw Ibrahim and Omar carrying chalk. "Come and draw with us!" they called out. Mariam smiled and joined them. They and drew flowers, stars, and a giant rainbow. Then, they found some sticks and made a tiny castle. At sunset, they watched the sky turn pink and orange. Mariam whispered, "Playing outside is more fun than any tablet game."

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is about _____.
- a. playing outside b. using a tablet
- c. walking on the sidewalk d. watching TV
2. The underlined word "**breeze**" means _____.
- a. strong wind b. light wind c. hot sun d. heavy rain

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why was Mariam feeling bored at first? _____
4. What did Mariam and her friends draw on the sidewalk? _____
5. How did Mariam feel after playing outside? _____

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Adam _____ (**going**) take pictures with his camera.
2. This movie is _____ (**exciting**) than the one we watched yesterday.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. an agreement - solved - The students - problems - with - their.

2. watching - a wildlife - I'm - documentary - animal helpers - about.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Our galaxy is called the milky Way -----
2. how does Hospital 57-3-57 help sick children -----

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Your future plans

summer vacation - travel - explore

Test 10

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق

	T	F
1. Ahmed is going to travel to Aswan next summer.	☐	☐
2. He is traveling with his family.	☐	☐
3. He is going to pack warm clothes.	☐	☐
4. Ahmed wants to share his photos with friends.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Kind people money to help sick children.
a. hike b. donate c. inspire d. perform
- Workers carefully cut the to make sweaters and blankets.
a. metal b. stone c. wool d. plastic
- Mars is planet for scientists to explore.
a. interesting b. more interesting
c. the most interesting d. most interestingly
- They are going to their suitcases tonight.
a. packed b. packing c. packs d. pack

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

tools - progress - in - music - by

Starting a hobby is fun and easy! First, choose something you love, like ①, art, or cycling. Next, get the ② you need, such as a guitar or seeds. Then, practice step ③ step and don't worry about being perfect. Finally, enjoy your ④ and share it with family or friends. Hobbies bring fun and friendship.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My friend and I made a poster about the solar system. It was a big project. First, we drew the Sun. Then, we drew the eight planets. Mercury is the smallest. Jupiter is the largest. Saturn has beautiful rings. We used color pencils. My friend is a better than me at drawing. But I know more facts. We worked as a team. Teamwork makes the job easier! Our poster was not messy. It was colorful and neat. The teacher said it was the most beautiful poster in the class.

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The poster was about
 a. animals b. games c. a story d. planets
2. is the smallest planet.
 a. Saturn b. Jupiter c. Mercury d. Mars

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the text in a sentence.
4. How many planets did they draw?
5. What did the teacher say about the poster?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Now the scarab beetle (work) on breaking down waste.
2. I couldn't solve puzzles when I was young, but now I (could).

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. a big - in - There's - the - aid kit - nurse's room - first.
2. eat - that - crops - harm - insects - Egrets.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. you mustn't stay up late when you're sick.
2. where are you going to travel next summer.

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A wonderful trip

Alexandria - swim - build sandcastles

.....

.....

Test 11

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



1. Loki is a smart cat.
2. A man stole a phone and ran away.
3. Loki used his nose to find the man.
4. Officer Samir caught the man.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. _____ helps us finish our school projects faster.
 a. Teamwork b. Enjoyment c. Movement d. Donation
2. My friends and I like to _____ in the green forest.
 a. pack b. donate c. hike d. craft
3. You _____ to wear a helmet when you ride a bicycle.
 a. has b. have c. must d. mustn't
4. Venus is the _____ planet in the solar system.
 a. hot b. hotter c. hottest d. most

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

outside - fun - excited - bored - friendship

On Friday morning, Tarek grabbed his tablet to play on, but the Wi-Fi stopped working. At first, he felt ① _____. Then he looked out the window and saw his friends playing ② _____. He decided to join them. They laughed and had so much ③ _____. At the end of the day, Tarek learned that real ④ _____ is better than any screen.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Next summer, I am going to travel to Hurghada with my family. We are going to see the Red Sea and swim in the warm water. I am going to ride a boat and watch colorful fish. We are going to relax on the beach and build sandcastles. I am going to take many pictures and enjoy every day. Traveling is fun because I can try new things and learn about different places. Next summer will be exciting and full of happy memories.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We're going to swim in the water.
a. deep b. cold c. fresh d. warm
2. We're going to and build sandcastles.
a. raise b. relax c. inspire d. perform

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How will the next summer be?
4. Summarize the things the writer is going to do the next summer.
5. Why is traveling fun?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Hala (not / eat) candy every day.
2. The boy is sleeping, you have to (being) quiet.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. beautiful - around - has - rings - it - Saturn
2. medicine - to - Mayar - get - goes - pharmacy - the.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What hobby does mohamed want to show
.....
2. donkeys transport goods to the market
.....

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Tips to stay healthy

check-up - take care of - rest

.....

.....

.....

Test 12

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

نص الاستماع آخر الملف



1. Jessy fell and hurt her elbow.
2. The nurse opened the first aid kit to help Jessy.
3. The nurse used a bandage from the kit.
4. The first aid kit was dirty and not ready.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐
☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. We will bring our bicycles and go after school.
a. skating b. cycling c. crafting d. painting
2. Seif his suitcase to see if he packed his swimming suit.
a. proved b. double-checked c. forgot d. traveled
3. The Nile is the river in Egypt.
a. long b. longer c. longest d. most long
4. Does Nader to Alexandria every summer holiday?
a. travels b. traveled c. traveling d. travel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

Planet - Saturn - screen - Mercury - solar

My class visited the planetarium last week. We learned about the ① system. We saw the Sun and the Moon on a big ② Mars is called the Red ③ Jupiter is very big. ④ is famous for its rings. All the planets are part of a galaxy.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My neighbor Mr Essam is a blind, and he has a guide dog, Luna. Luna is very calm and careful. Right now, they are walking to the market. She helps him cross the street safely. Luna's job is very important. Every day, she helps him move around without getting hurt. She is not just a helper; she is his best friend. He takes good care of her, he gives her food and water. He brushes her fur. She also takes good care of him. They are a great team. Mr Essam loves Luna very much.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Luna always helps Mr Essam move without getting
a. sick b. hurt c. tired d. well
2. Right now, Mr Essam and Luna are
a. watching TV b. walking to the market
c. getting hurt d. sleeping outside

B- Answer the following questions:

3. What is the name of Mr Essam's guide dog?
4. How does Luna help Mr Essam?
5. Why does Mr Essam need a guide dog?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. My grandma is going (bake) a cake this afternoon.
2. Hoda is (careful) than Mona.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. board games - teamwork - learn - Playing - people - helps.
2. to - visit - plan - Qaitbay Citadel - They - Alexandria - in.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. geckos eat insects at homes
2. what is Marwan doing now

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Getting ready for a trip

pack - tickets - crowded

.....

.....

.....

Test 13

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The Great Pyramids of Giza are new and famous.	☐	☐
2. You can ride a boat on the Nile River.	☐	☐
3. Egypt has a beautiful Red Sea.	☐	☐
4. Koshari is an example of Egyptian food.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- The egret raids quickly with its sharp beak to catch
 a. hoppers b. pigeons c. buffaloes d. dogs
- is a group of many stars.
 a. Saturn b. Mercury c. Galaxy d. Jupiter
- She couldn't swim when she was five, but now she swim well.
 a. can b. can't c. could d. couldn't
- They volleyball. They are playing tennis.
 a. aren't playing b. am not playing c. don't play d. doesn't play

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

perform - crafting - doing - puzzles - playing

In the Talent Show, children enjoy fun activities. One student likes singing, and another enjoys ① the piano. Some children prefer ② with paper and painting. Others enjoy cycling and skating after school. Solving ③ helps them think. Every child has a special talent to ④

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Lily was swimming in the sea. A big wave suddenly came! Lily was in danger. A friendly dolphin swam to her quickly. The dolphin pushed Lily to the shore. Lily was safe on the sand. "Thank you!" she said to the dolphin. The dolphin made a happy sound. Then, it swam away into the deep blue water. Lily learned that animals can be heroes, too. Now, she always smiles when she sees dolphins playing in the waves. She will never forget her kind, rescue dolphin.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lily learned that animals can be
a. hobbies b. classmates c. heroes d. children
2. The is the land near the sea.
a. rock b. shore c. wave d. sound

B- Answer the following questions:

3. Who helped Lily when she was in danger?
4. Summarize the passage in two sentences.
5. Why does Lily smile when she sees dolphins playing in the waves?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. This is the (funny) story I have ever read.
2. You (must) use the first aid kit without your mother's permission.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. a fever - I - and - a sore - have - throat.
2. the - Adel - near - camping - went - mountains.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. What places did you visit in egypt
2. the falcon is hunting over the field at this moment

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Amazing helper animal

What's your amazing helper animal?

What makes him amazing?

Where does this animal live?

.....

.....

.....

Test 14

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. The father's hobby is cooking.	☐	☐
2. The brother enjoys playing football.	☐	☐
3. The family shares their hobbies in the morning.	☐	☐
4. Hobbies make the family feel happy.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Please don't me when I am reading.
a. hunt b. bother c. compare d. realize
- Are Suzan and Murad at home?
a. stay b. going to stay c. stays d. going stay
- Salma's temperature is very high. She has a
a. headache b. fever c. sore throat d. cough
- We worry about small cuts because the nurse will help us.
a. have to b. don't have to c. must d. doesn't have to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

crops - easier - ploughs - difficult - helpers

Water buffaloes help Egyptian farmers a lot. They pull ① in the fields. They are strong and work hard to prepare the soil for planting ② Farmers depend on them to make farming ③ and faster. These animals are important ④ for growing food and supporting farm life in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Yesterday, Ahmed had a small accident on the playground. He fell and got a cut on his leg. He was injured. His friend told the teacher right away. The teacher took him to the nurse's room. The nurse was ready. She opened the first aid kit. She cleaned the cut and put a plaster on it. It was not serious. She told him to be more careful next time. Ahmed learned that he must play safely. He also learned that the nurse is there to help.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The nurse put on Ahmed's cut.
a. medicine b. a bandage c. a plaster d. a glove
- The word "**serious**" means
a. safe b. simple c. small d. dangerous

B- Answer the following questions:

- What is the main idea of the passage?
- Why did the teacher take Ahmed to the nurse's room?
- What lessons did Ahmed learn?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

- Omar is the (**good**) player in our team.
- The scarab beetle (**help**) the soil every day.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

- was - excited - on - **Salma** - play - tablet - to - her.
- ago - moved - **Soliman** - years - abroad - many.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- why did Asmaa feel bored
- nour enjoys puzzles and board games

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A camping trip

tents - campfire - nature trail

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 15

1 Listen and write (T) true or (F) false:

استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الملحق



	T	F
1. Kenda feels active and energetic.	☐	☐
2. Kenda's mother took her to the clinic.	☐	☐
3. The doctor says her illness is serious.	☐	☐
4. She cannot eat ice cream for two days.	☐	☐

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- The _____ studied the planets in space.
a. pilot b. astronaut c. teacher d. pianist
- Good _____ is important for a team to succeed.
a. enjoyment b. leadership c. friendship d. excitement
- He _____ draw nice pictures today, he is taking lessons.
a. can b. could c. can't d. couldn't
- This movie is _____ than the one we saw last week.
a. worst b. the worst c. worse d. bad

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص بالكلمات من الإطار:

hike - campfire - receive - adventure - tents

Next weekend, our class will go on a camping trip. We will sleep in ① _____. During the day, we will ② _____ along a nature trail and see plants and birds. In the evening, we will sit around a ③ _____, tell stories, and sing songs. Camping trips are fun and full of ④ _____.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Renad enjoys spending her free time on her favorite hobby. After school, she likes drawing and writing stories. Her hobby helps her relax and have fun. When Renad draws or writes, she practices creativity and patience. This makes her feel calm and happy. Her hobby also helps her think better and get new ideas. Renad knows hobbies are important because they help children stay **strong** and smart. Hobbies do not take the place of schoolwork, but they make learning easier and more fun.

Tests

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The text is mostly about
a. schoolwork b. drawing skills c. hobbies d. feeling happy
2. Renad feels when she draws or writes.
a. tired b. bored c. angry d. calm

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How do Renad's hobbies help her?
4. What is the opposite of the word "**strong**"?
5. Why are hobbies important for children?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الصيغة الصحيحة للكلمات من بين الأقواس:

1. Right now, the gecko (**not/move**); it is waiting for an insect.
2. Hossam (**don't**) buy a new plaster; he has some at home.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل صحيحة:

1. walk - people - help - safely - **Guide dogs** - blind.
2. the most - star - is - enormous - our - galaxy - **The sun** - in.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. is Ahmed playing tennis now -
2. let's go to the pharmacy to get your medicine -

8 Write a paragraph of about Forty (40) words using the words below:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

A visit to your grandpa's farm

Where is your grandpa's farm?

What did you see on the farm?

What did you enjoy there?

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar general tests

AL- Azhar

Test 1

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: أستمع و اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Last _____, Hadeer visited Luxor and Aswan.

- a. spring b. autumn c. summer d. winter

2. She rode a _____ on the Nile River in Aswan.

- a. bus b. train c. boat d. car

3. The sun was bright, and the sky was _____.

- a. red b. cloudy c. blue d. green

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

largest - Mars - rings - soil

Karim : Hana, look at the planets! Do you know which one is the Red Planet?

Hana : Yes, it's ① _____.

Karim : Why is it called the Red Planet?

Hana : Because its ② _____ looks red because of iron.

Karim : Wow! Which planet is the ③ _____?

Hana : That's Jupiter.

Karim : And what about those ④ _____?

Hana : They are around Saturn.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. The nurse cleaned the cut and put _____ on it.

- a. bandages b. bruises c. scissors d. paints

2. _____ are rescue animals that help people who are in danger in the sea.

- a. Horses b. Water buffaloes c. Egrets d. Dolphins

3. Mars is _____ than Mercury.

- a. cold b. colder c. coldest d. more cold

4. My dad _____ an email now; he is reading a book.

- a. isn't writing b. doesn't write c. is writing d. writes

Tests

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحّ الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. Ahmed have to finish his homework before going out. (.....)
2. I be going to make a cake for Sara tomorrow. (.....)
3. She can play the piano now, but she is learning. (.....)
4. My father usually watch TV in the evening. (.....)

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Next Friday, our school will have a small talent day in the school hall. Students will share their hobbies and skills. My sister will perform by singing a happy song. Her friend, Nada, will play the guitar. I enjoy drawing, so I will show my pictures. Other students will dance, solve puzzles, and do crafting with paper. At the end, we will clap and take photos together. It will be a fun and exciting day.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

1. The talent day will be at school.

T	F
☐	☐
☐	☐

2. Nada will do some crafting with paper.

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. The will sing a happy song.

- a. writer b. teacher c. sister d. friend

4. The writer will share

- a. drawing b. cycling c. singing d. skating

5. The talent day will happen next

- a. Monday b. Friday c. Sunday d. week

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) جمل عن:

A day on a farm

Guiding words

milk cows - lay eggs - donkeys - work hard

.....

.....

.....

AL- Azhar

Test 2

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: أستمع و اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Students talked about animal helpers at
a. home b. school c. market d. zoo
- spoke about guide dogs.
a. Omar b. Sara c. Lina d. No one
- Sara talked about
a. pigeons b. falcons c. buffaloes d. donkeys

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

share - warm - wait for - campfire

Rodina : Ahmed, are you ready for our camping trip?

Ahmed : Yes! I packed my ① clothes, a torch, and a water bottle.

Rodina : Great! I'm excited to hike, see birds, and sit around the ②!

Ahmed : Don't forget to take lots of photos to ③ with your family.

Rodina : Of course! I can't ④ my first camping trip.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- My sister enjoys because books are useful.
a. painting b. singing c. reading d. cycling
- Saturn is famous its rings.
a. in b. for c. about d. of
- I to work tomorrow; it's my day off.
a. don't have b. must c. have d. mustn't
- Sally speak English well?
a. Is b. Has c. Does d. Do

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

- I am read a book at the moment. (.....)
- Jupiter is the colorful planet in the solar system. (.....)

Tests

3. Children mustn't **ate** too much candy. (-----)
4. They **can't** come to the party yesterday because they were sick. (-----)

5 Read and answer the questions: اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Rayan, my little brother, does not feel well. He often has a cough and a fever. My mom took him to the clinic. The doctor checked his body. He has a bad cold. The doctor gave him important advice and new rules. He must drink warm liquids, rest well, and take his medicine every day. We will help him get better.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Rayan has a sore throat and a fever.	☐	☐
2. The doctor told him to drink warm liquids.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. The ----- took Rayan to the clinic.
 a. father b. mother c. brother d. teacher
4. Rayan must ----- every day .
 a. play outside b. take his medicine c. go to school d. watch TV
5. Rayan has ----- .
 a. a headache b. a broken arm
 c. a bad cold d. high blood pressure

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) جمل عن:

A trip to the space museum

Guiding words

guide - solar system - planets - largest

AL- Azhar

Test 3

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: أستمع واختار الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Waleed hurt his arm while playing in the
a. classroom b. playground c. library d. hospital
- Waleed went to the room.
a. teacher's b. nurse's c. music d. art
- The nurse gave Waleed a
a. bandage b. plaster c. medicine d. bruise

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

fun - what - chalk - outside

Eyad : Dad, I'm bored. My tablet has no Wi-Fi.

Father : That's okay, Eyad. You can play ①

Eyad : But ② can I do out there?

Father : Look! Your friends are drawing with ③ Join them, it will be fun.

Eyad : Okay, I'll try.

Father : Playing outside can be even more ④ than a tablet game.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- She shows her by painting beautiful pictures.
a. argument b. discussion c. arrangement d. creativity
- "....." means very happy and full of energy.
a. Bored b. Lonely c. Excited d. Impossible
- She take the medicine; it's important for her health.
a. must b. mustn't c. have to d. don't have to
- The Sun is star in our solar system.
a. bright b. brighter c. the brightest d. more bright

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحّ الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. Can your brother play tennis when he was four? (-----)
2. They are eating breakfast at home at 7 am every day. (-----)
3. The kids are going to play football because the park is closed. (-----)
4. We don't has to worry about exams. (-----)

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I am watching a wildlife documentary about animal helpers. Falcons help farmers by catching rats that eat crops. They have sharp eyes and strong claws. Falcons sometimes sit on water buffaloes to see better. The buffaloes don't mind. Donkeys also help by carrying crops and heavy loads to the markets. Falcons and other helpers make the food healthier. Farmers are happy because these animals work hard and keep the fields safe.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. Falcons use water buffaloes to see better.	☐	☐
2. Farmers are unhappy with the animal helpers.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. Falcons catch to help farmers.
 a. birds b. rats c. insects d. fish
4. Falcons sometimes sits on
 a. trees b. water buffaloes c. donkeys d. fences
5. Donkeys carry to the markets.
 a. toys b. crops and heavy loads
 c. clothes d. tools

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) جمل عن:

A nice trip you had

Guiding words

packed - saw - took photos - wonderful

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: أستمع و اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

- Maya and Laila wanted to finish their on time.
a. schoolwork b. poster c. games d. music
- They used teamwork to prepare a/an project.
a. maths b. science c. English d. Arabic
- Laila colored and wrote
a. facts b. songs c. letters d. jokes

2 Read and complete the dialog: اقرأ واكمل المحادثة:

serious - cough - hurts - medicine

Doctor : Hello, Murad. How are you feeling today?

Murad : Not good, Doctor. I have a ① and a sore throat.

Doctor : I see. What else do you have?

Murad : My stomach ② , too.

Doctor : Don't worry. It's not ③

Murad : What must I do?

Doctor : You must take this ④ , rest and drink a lot of warm liquids.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة :

- I drew a house on the ground using colorful
a. chalk b. paper c. pen d. book
- Egrets help farmers by eating insects that crops.
a. raid b. harm c. bother d. provide
- I swim well when I was a child.
a. can b. can't c. could d. doesn't
- They always speak English at work. They Arabic.
a. aren't speaking b. not speaking c. don't speak d. not speak

Tests

4 Read and correct the underlined mistakes:

اقرأ وصحح الأخطاء الموجودة تحت الخط:

1. What you are going to pack in your suitcase? (-----)
2. We mustn't cover our mouth when we cough. (-----)
3. Mount Everest is the high mountain in the world. (-----)
4. Do they working at a hospital? (-----)

5 Read and answer the questions:

اقرأ وأجب عن الأسئلة:

John visited Egypt last spring. He was very excited to see the Great Pyramids in Giza and learn about ancient history. In Alexandria, he walked by the sea and visited the famous library. Then, he traveled to Luxor and Aswan. He saw beautiful temples and rode a boat on the Nile River. John enjoyed the warm weather, took many photos, and loved the friendly people.

A: Write true (T) or false (F):

	T	F
1. John visited the famous library in Alexandria.	☐	☐
2. John didn't enjoy the weather in Egypt.	☐	☐

B: Choose the correct answer:

3. John learnt about ancient in the Great Pyramids.
 a. people b. history c. places d. temples
4. In Alexandria, we walked by the
 a. sea b. shop c. pyramids d. Nile
5. John on the Nile River .
 a. swam b. fished c. rode a boat d. built a sandcastle

6 Write a paragraph of FOUR sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤) جمل عن:

Hobbies

Guiding words

favorite - practice - talent show - important

Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كراسة التدريبات



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع

الواردة في كراسة التدريبات والاختبارات

Test Unit 1

Hobbies are important. They help us relax and have fun. Hobbies show how people grow. Children can draw. Others can write stories.

Test Unit 2

The nurse's room is very important. The room has bandages and plasters. Nurses must call parents if a student feels too sick. The first aid kit helps everyone stay safe at school.

Test Unit 3

I go to a campsite with my friends. I pack my suitcases. I wear warm clothes. I sit around a campfire and listen to stories.

Test Unit 4

Animals can help us. Dolphins can help people who are in danger in the water. The donkeys can carry things. The pigeons can carry notes and be messengers. Falcons can catch rats.

Test Unit 5

We visited the planetarium. Mars is the red planet. Jupiter is the largest planet. Saturn is famous for its rings.

General Tests

Test 1

My friends and I are going on a camping trip. We will travel to a campsite near the mountains. We are going to set up small tents together. During the day, we will hike on the mountain trail. At night, we will cook food, sing songs, and watch the stars. It will be a fun and exciting trip.

Test 2

Last month, Sara visited Hospital 57-3-57 with her family. The hospital was clean and bright. The doctors and nurses were kind and friendly. They saw children receiving treatment. She learned that donations help

the hospital give free care. The visit made her proud.

Test 3

Younis is 9 years old. He wants to join the hobby talent show at his school. He will perform by playing the piano. He practices every afternoon at home. Younis feels excited but a little nervous. He hopes his classmates enjoy his music.

Test 4

I am excited that we are going to my grandparents' village. It is very quiet, not crowded like the city. My grandma is going to cook delicious traditional food. I will help my grandpa in his garden. I feel very peaceful about this trip. We will spend a whole week there.

Test 5

At the planetarium, Laila and Mazen learned about space with a guide. They saw the Sun, Moon, and many planets on a big screen. Mars was called the Red Planet. They named small planets and learned that Jupiter is the largest. Saturn is famous for its rings. All planets and stars are part of the Milky Way galaxy.

Test 6

On farms, donkeys carry heavy loads. Water buffaloes pull ploughs to help farmers plant crops. Pigeons carry messages. Geckos eat insects, and scarab beetles work in the soil to make it better for plants. These animals show that humans and animals can work together to help each other.

Test 7

Marwan wants to be a doctor to help sick people feel better and healthy. Doctors save lives and care for others every day. He likes science and learning about the human body. Being a doctor makes him feel proud because he can help his community and make people smile again.

Test 8

Razan read an article about Sara Sabry, the first Egyptian female astronaut. Sara traveled to space in 2022. She studied the solar system and planets. Razan learned that Mercury is smaller than Earth and Jupiter is the largest planet. Razan felt very proud. She now wants to learn more about space.

Test 9

Yassin and Radwa had to make a poster about the planets. Yassin tried to work alone, but the poster was messy. Later, he asked Radwa for help. They worked together, coloring planets and writing facts. The poster looked bright and clear. They learned that teamwork makes work easier and better.

Test 10

Next winter, Ahmed is going to travel to Aswan with his family. He is excited to visit new places. Ahmed is going to pack warm clothes, a jacket, and comfortable shoes. He will also take his camera to take a lot of photos to share the happy moments with his friends.

Test 11

Loki is a smart police dog. He works with Officer Samir. One night, a man stole a bag and ran away. Loki used his nose to catch the criminal. He followed the man through streets. Then, he barked. Officer Samir came and caught the man. Loki was happy.

Test 12

Jessy fell in the playground and hurt her knee. She had a small cut. The teacher took Jessy to the nurse's room. The nurse opened the first aid kit. She used a bandage and medicine from the kit. She put a plaster on it. The kit was clean and ready, so the nurse could help Jessy right away.

Test 13

When you visit Egypt, you must visit the Great Pyramids of Giza because they are very old and famous. You can ride a boat on the Nile River and enjoy the beautiful Red Sea. You should try Egyptian food like *koshari*. I am sure you will have a wonderful time.

Test 14

My family enjoys different hobbies together. My father likes gardening. My mother enjoys cooking and baking cakes. My brother likes playing football. My sister enjoys drawing and singing songs. In the evening, we share our hobbies and talk together. Family hobbies make us happy.

Test 15**- Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:**

Kenda feels very tired and her body hurts. She has a sore throat and fever. Her father takes her to the clinic. The doctor says it's not serious. Kenda must rest and drink warm liquids. She cannot eat ice cream for two days. Then, they go to the pharmacy to get her medicine.

AL- Azhar general tests**Test 1**

Last summer, Hadeer visited Luxor and Aswan. She saw the big temples. She rode a boat on the Nile River in Aswan. The sun was bright, and the sky was blue. She took many photos and had a fun day.

Test 2

At school, students talked about animal helpers. Each student shared one animal. Lina spoke about guide dogs. Omar shared about water buffaloes. Sara talked about falcons. After a short discussion, everyone felt excited learning how animals help humans every day.

Test 3

Waleed hurt his arm while playing in the playground yesterday. He went to the nurse's room. The nurse checked the first aid kit and gave him a plaster. The nurse advised him to play safely.

Test 4

Maya and Laila wanted to finish their schoolwork on time. They used teamwork to prepare a science project. Maya made a poster with pictures, while Laila colored and wrote facts.